

DEUCE'S  
ROBINSON  
GIBSON

PZ

3

D362R

126

FT MEADE  
GenColl





Class PZ 3

Book . D 362 R  
126

Copyright N<sup>o</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

**COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.**











THE LIFE AND ADVENTURES  
OF  
ROBINSON CRUSOE



# Macmillan's Pocket American and English Classics.

*A Series of English Texts, edited for use in Elementary and Secondary Schools, with Critical Introductions, Notes, etc.*

16mo.

Cloth.

25c. each.

Addison's Sir Roger de Coverley.  
Browning's Shorter Poems.  
Browning, Mrs., Poems (Selected).  
Burke's Speech on Conciliation.  
Byron's Childe Harold's Pilgrimage.  
Byron's Shorter Poems.  
Carlyle's Essay on Burns.  
Chaucer's Prologue and Knight's Tale.  
Coleridge's The Ancient Mariner.  
Cooper's The Deerslayer.  
Cooper's The Last of the Mohicans.  
De Quincey's Confessions of an English Opium-Eater.  
Dryden's Palamon and Arcite.  
Early American Orations, 1760-1824.  
Edwards' (Jonathan) Sermons.  
Eliot's Silas Marner.  
Epoch-making Papers in U. S. History.  
Franklin's Autobiography.  
Goldsmith's The Vicar of Wakefield.  
Hawthorne's Twice-told Tales (Selections from).  
Irving's Life of Goldsmith.  
Irving's The Alhambra.  
Irving's Sketch Book.  
Longfellow's Evangeline.  
Lowell's The Vision of Sir Launfal.  
Macaulay's Essay on Addison.  
Macaulay's Essay on Hastings.  
Macaulay's Essay on Lord Clive.  
Macaulay's Essay on Milton.

Macaulay's Lays of Ancient Rome.  
Macaulay's Life of Samuel Johnson.  
Milton's Comus and Other Poems.  
Milton's Paradise Lost, Bks. I and II.  
Old English Ballads.  
Palgrave's Golden Treasury.  
Plutarch's Lives (Cæsar, Brutus, and Mark Antony).  
Poe's Poems.  
Poe's Prose Tales (Selections from).  
Pope's Homer's Iliad.  
Ruskin's Sesame and Lilies.  
Scott's Ivanhoe.  
Scott's Lady of the Lake.  
Scott's Lay of the Last Minstrel.  
Scott's Marmion.  
Shakespeare's As You Like It.  
Shakespeare's Hamlet.  
Shakespeare's Julius Cæsar.  
Shakespeare's Macbeth.  
Shakespeare's Merchant of Venice.  
Shakespeare's Twelfth Night.  
Shelley and Keats: Poems.  
Southern Poets: Selections.  
Spenser's Faerie Queene, Book I.  
Stevenson's Treasure Island.  
Tennyson's Idylls of the King.  
Tennyson's The Princess.  
Tennyson's Shorter Poems.  
Woolman's Journal.  
Wordsworth's Shorter Poems.

OTHERS TO FOLLOW.







ROBINSON CRUSOE

(See page 85)



THE LIFE AND ADVENTURES

OF

ROBINSON CRUSOE

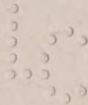
BY

DANIEL DEFOE

EDITED WITH NOTES AND AN INTRODUCTION

BY

CLIFTON JOHNSON



New York

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

LONDON: MACMILLAN & CO., LTD.

1904

*All rights reserved*

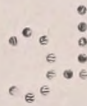
LIBRARY of CONGRESS  
Two Copies Received  
NOV 15 1904  
Copyright Entry  
*Nov. 15, 1904*  
CLASS a XXc. No:  
*101722*  
COPY B.

PZ3  
D 362 R  
126

*35*

COPYRIGHT, 1904,  
By THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

Set up and electrotyped. Published November, 1904.



Norwood Press  
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.  
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.



## NOTE

“ROBINSON CRUSOE” as here reprinted is condensed and edited for the use of schools. The omissions consist largely either of portions not concerned with the hero’s life on his island, or of repetitions and reflections that add nothing to the interest of the story. Practically every incident of his island life is included. Obsolete words not easily understood have been modernized, and occasional other minor changes have been necessary, but as a whole the text is Defoe’s own.





# CONTENTS

	PAGE
Introduction . . . . .	ix

## CHAPTER I

Of my birth and education — My desire to go to sea — I go on board a ship bound for London — The ship is wrecked in a severe storm off Yarmouth and I barely escape with my life — I make my way by land from Yarmouth to London . . . . .	1
--	---

## CHAPTER II

I fall in with the master of a ship about to sail for the coast of Guinea, and I make a prosperous voyage with him — I start on a second voyage to Guinea, but the ship is taken by pirates — At the Moorish port of Sallee I live a captive for two years — On escaping I cruise for many days southward along the African coast until I am taken up by a Portuguese trader bound for the Brazils . . . . .	8
--	---

## CHAPTER III

I buy land in the Brazils and become a planter — In 1659, I begin a voyage to Africa after negroes — The ship is driven out of its course by storms and is wrecked on a strange coast — We launch the ship's boat, but it is over-	
--	--

turned and I alone reach the land alive — My first day on the island and my visit to the ship — I make a raft and carry much goods to shore — I continue to go to the ship nearly every day for some time and bring away all I can . . . . . 20

## CHAPTER IV

I seek a place where I can make my dwelling — Having pitched my tent and fortified it, I dig a cave — A thunderstorm frights me with the thought that the lightning might explode all my powder — I separate the powder into small parcels and bestow it in a number of different places — Of how I killed goats for my food, and of how I kept a reckoning of time by cutting notches on a post . . . 35

## CHAPTER V

Of my work day by day — I am greatly astonished to find some stalks of rice and barley springing up near my dwelling — An earthquake nearly destroys my cave — The wrecked ship is heaved up in a new posture and I bring many more things out of it — I have a violent attack of ague — In a chest where I had stowed various articles I find a Bible, and the reading of it greatly comforts me . 41

## CHAPTER VI

I recover from my ague — Of a journey I made into the island — I discover melons, limes, and abundance of grapes fit for raisins — Of my cats — I dig up a piece of ground and sow my grain — I travel to the other side of the island, and I bring home a young parrot and a kid I captured . 54



## CHAPTER VII

	PAGE
I return from my wandering journey — Of how I made me a board for a long shelf — I harvest my first crop of barley and rice — My troubles in making pots and jars — I build a boat, but am not able to launch it — I make some clothes and a great umbrella out of the skins of animals . . . .	63

## CHAPTER VIII

I hew out a second boat, get it into the water, and begin a voyage around the island — A swift current carries me a great distance to sea — With difficulty I get back, and being landed on the north side of the island I return home on foot — I capture some young goats and fence them a pasturage — Of my dress and appearance — I am surprised with the print of a man's naked foot on the shore — I strengthen my defences . . . . .	76
---	----

## CHAPTER IX

I place part of my herd of goats in a more retired part of my dominions — I find on the shore skulls and other bones of human bodies where the savages have feasted on their fellow-creatures — Of my inventions to destroy some of the cannibals — I discover a natural cave in the interior of the island . . . . .	93
---	----

## CHAPTER X

Of my life and surroundings in the twenty-third year of my residence in the island — I am startled one foul night with the noise of a gun fired at sea — In the morning I see the wreck of a ship cast away on some distant rocks — I make a voyage in my boat to the wreck — The sav-	
--	--



ages land on my side of the island with several captives — One of the prisoners escapes and runs up into the island — I rescue him from his pursuers and he becomes my servant and I name him Friday . . . . . 101

## CHAPTER XI

I teach Friday to help me in my work — He learns to talk English and tells me of his nation, and of their wars and religion and of some white men who dwelt with his people — We make another boat and fit it with a mast and sails . . . . . 115

## CHAPTER XII

Three more canoes come to the island — I discover a white man among the prisoners brought by the savages — We attack the cannibals and release the white man, who proves to be a Spaniard, and another prisoner whom Friday finds is his old father — Sixteen of the Spaniard's countrymen being on the mainland, whither they had escaped from a wreck four years previous, he goes after them accompanied by Friday's father . . . . . 127

## CHAPTER XIII

I discover an English ship anchored near the island — A boat from the ship comes to the shore with eleven men in it, three of whom seem to be prisoners — The prisoners being left on the beach, while the rest go away inland, I go to the prisoners' assistance and learn that they are the captain and mate of the ship and a passenger — I likewise learn that the crew has mutinied — By strategy we capture all of the crew who had come to the island . . . . . 140



CHAPTER XIV

	PAGE
Of the measures we took to regain possession of the ship — I accept the offer of the captain to take me back to England, and I leave my island after having been there more than eight and twenty years — I reach England and find that nearly all my relatives and old friends are dead — I visit Lisbon and discover that the Portuguese captain who carried me to the Brazils is still alive — From him I learn that my plantation in the Brazils has largely increased in value — He assists me to sell it and I return to England . . . . .	155

CHAPTER XV

I marry and stay in my native land for seven years — My wife dying, my wandering disposition again takes possession of me — My nephew, being commander of a ship about to make a voyage to the East Indies, proposes to take me with him — We seek out my island — Of the five mutineers left behind by the ship which carried me to England, and of the Spaniards who came to the island soon after I left . . . . .	164
---	-----

CHAPTER XVI

Numerous savages visit the island and two hostile nations engage there in battle — The three worst Englishmen and the Spaniards come to blows and the Englishmen are turned out of the plantation — They establish homes on the other side of the island — They presently take one of the boats and go away, but return after two and twenty days — With them they bring eight savages, five of whom are women — The women become the wives of the five Englishmen . . . . .	178
--	-----

## CHAPTER XVII

	PAGE
Of more visits to the island by the savages, who burn the habitations of two of the Englishmen — The savages are repulsed, but return in a great army — A battle is fought and a large part of the savages are killed and the rest are made prisoners — They are given a portion of the island and taught to provide food for themselves . . .	191

## CHAPTER XVIII

Of the things I brought from England and presented to my colony — Of the condition in which I left the island — We sail away, and three days later encounter a fleet of savage canoes — The death of Friday — The voyage is continued and I at length again arrive in my native land	205
NOTES . . . . .	213



## INTRODUCTION

FOUR hundred miles out in the Pacific Ocean, directly west of the city of Valparaiso, is the little island of Juan Fernandez, eighteen miles long by six miles wide. For the most part the island is covered with high rocky mountains ; yet there are numerous fertile valleys secluded among the stony ridges, and in them grow oats, apples, strawberries, melons, grapes, and figs, while numbers of wild goats wander on the cliffs. About a dozen families of Chilians are the island's only human occupants, and the object of supreme interest on this ocean-girt bit of land is a humble monument on a seaward-looking hill inscribed to the memory of Alexander Selkirk.

In the year 1704 Selkirk was the second in command of an English man-of-war cruising on the west coast of South America. He had been involved in frequent quarrels with the captain, and, furthermore, he believed that the vessel on which he was an officer was unseaworthy. At his own request, therefore, he was set ashore on this then uninhabited island of Juan Fernandez, and the man-of-war went on its way. From the ship he had received certain necessaries and his personal effects, and with no further aid, save what was supplied by his own wit and labor, he continued on the island in complete solitude for the space of four years and four months.

After his rescue and his return to England his strange experience attracted a good deal of attention, and several accounts of it were published. But curiosity was soon satisfied, and Selkirk would probably have been wholly forgotten had it not



been for the appearance in 1719 of a book entitled, *The Life and Strange Surprising Adventures of Robinson Crusoe*. This took Selkirk's story for its foundation, and it made him and his island forever famous. It, however, treated the facts freely, and made the whole a vivid personal narrative in which the daily life and thought, work and troubles of the hero are brought before its readers almost as clearly as if they had shared the hero's experiences.

The public delighted in the book from the very first, and few characters in fiction have ever given such universal satisfaction as has Defoe's depiction of this English adventurer. Seventeen days after the book was put on the market the demand made necessary a second edition, and in a short time still other editions had to be supplied. Its fame spread rapidly, and the story constantly grew in favor; yet it did not escape criticism, and it was parodied and derided. That, however, only served to draw attention to it even more generally, till at length an unfriendly critic of the day scoffingly announced, "There is not an old woman that can go to the price of it, but buys and leaves it as a legacy, with the *Pilgrim's Progress*, the *Practice of Piety*, and *God's Revenge against Murther*, to her posterity." Another evidence of the book's widespread popularity is found in the fact that soon after its publication one of the pirates who then infested the coasts of Carolina and Virginia named his ship after Defoe's hero. This made the author very angry, and he called the pirate "a most bloody-minded murdering rogue" for thus misusing an honest name.

Defoe followed up his success with a continuation of the narrative, and this second part was brought out in less than half a year from the time the first was issued. A month or two later the *London Post* began to reprint the whole in weekly parts, and it thereby became the first serial in the language.

Both volumes were promptly translated into French and German, and, in the years since, this work of Defoe's has been trans-



lated into almost every printed language, even into Latin and Greek. In English its forms are countless. There are styles suited to every class of readers and to all purses. Indeed, there have been abridgments that sold for a farthing.

The success of *Robinson Crusoe* inspired many imitations, but none of these rivalled the original or attained any lasting fame. Defoe himself not only published the continuation of his romance already mentioned, but later added a third volume, composed of Crusoe's "Serious Reflections." The public, however, did not care for Crusoe's thoughts with no adventures to give them spice, and this third part long ago dropped into oblivion, and is now little known and never reprinted. The first part was decidedly the best, though the second was scarcely inferior as long as it had to do with the story of the island, for with Robinson's final departure from the spot which for so large a portion of his life had been his home, he goes on a wandering journey into Asia. He has no lack of adventures, but they are disconnected, and the relation of them fails to hold the interest.

Daniel Defoe, the creator of *Robinson Crusoe*, was born in London in 1661. He was the son of James Foe, a butcher. Why he changed the name to which he was heir is not known, but he did not sign himself Defoe until middle life, and even then sometimes returned to the older form. The father was prosperous and in good repute. He was a prominent dissenter, and, with the intention that his son should become a Nonconformist minister, sent him at the age of fourteen to the academy of Rev. Charles Morton. This teacher Defoe always spoke of with respect and gratitude. The school excelled in its teaching of English. It also did much to train its pupils to reflect on current politics, and the master took especial pains to impart such knowledge that his pupils would not enter blindly in after life on the controversies of their day.

After four or five years of schooling, the idea of making a minister of Defoe was abandoned, and he began a business



career in the office of a London hosier. About the time he finished his apprenticeship the Monmouth Rebellion broke out, and Defoe joined the rebels and fought in the battle of Sedgemoor against the dominion of James II. After the defeat and dispersion of the insurgents, Defoe, to escape the danger of hanging, fled to the continent. Until England became tranquil he stayed in Spain and Portugal. Then he returned and established himself in London as a hosier. He was energetic and daring in business, and presently became a merchant adventurer in trade with Spain. His failure was a result, but he went on undiscouraged, and in the end paid every penny of indebtedness. Lost ground was rapidly recovered; he was appointed to a lucrative government position, and established some profitable tile works on the Thames, about twenty miles east of London.

When the year 1702 began it found Defoe prosperous, famed as a writer, and in high favor with the king and the government. By the end of the year he was persecuted, proscribed, and ruined. The king had died, and under Queen Anne, his successor, there was a renewal of bitterness toward Nonconformists. This drew from Defoe a satirical pamphlet entitled, *The Shortest Way with Dissenters*. It purported to be written in the interests of the would-be persecutors, and was at first hailed by them with applause. When they saw its true meaning and effect they were very much enraged. The pamphlet proposed, with the utmost apparent soberness, that whoever was found at a dissenters' meeting "should be banished the nation and the preacher be hanged." Such extravagance reduced the whole argument to absurdity, and made the cruel zeal of the queen's party public laughing-stock.

The author's name was soon known, and a state prosecution was set on foot. In the *London Gazette* for January 10, 1703, appeared the following advertisement: "Whereas Daniel De Foe is charged with writing a scandalous and seditious pamphlet, entitled, *The Shortest Way with the Dissenters*. He



is a middle-sized, spare man, of a brown complexion, and dark brown hair, but wears a wig; a hooked nose, a sharp chin, gray eyes, and a large mole near his mouth; was born in London; is owner of the brick and pantile works near Tilbury: Whoever shall discover the said Daniel De Foe to one of Her Majesty's Secretaries of State, or justices of the peace so he may be apprehended, shall have a reward of £50, which Her Majesty has ordered immediately to be paid on such discovery."

On February 26 the offending book, by order of parliament, was burnt by the common hangman in New Palace Yard. The author was in safe hiding, but as vengeance would have been wreaked on the printer and bookseller, to save them, he gave himself up and was committed to prison. At his trial he pleaded guilty, the government having promised him protection. This promise was violated. He was fined, condemned to stand three times in the pillory, to be further imprisoned, and to give sureties for good behavior for seven years.

Twenty days after this sentence was pronounced, he was exposed in the public stocks. But meanwhile Defoe had written and had printed his *Hymn to the Pillory*, and it had caught the popular fancy. Crowds came to see the man with his neck and wrists fast in the gaunt frame of the pillory, but they did not come to deride. The people formed a guard around him, crowned and garlanded him with flowers, it being summer-time, and sang his hymn in chorus around him, repeating with special fervor the lines:—

" Tell them the men who placed him here  
Are scandals to the times:  
Are at a loss to find his guilt,  
And can't commit his crimes."

Defoe's imprisonment lasted a year, and in that time his tile works failed. But immediately on his release his fertile genius and indomitable industry began to retrieve the lost fortune. In



the year 1709 he settled permanently on the outskirts of London city at Stoke Newington. He was again persecuted in 1714, and in 1730, to escape the vengeance of an enemy high in government favor, he had to go into hiding; but these interruptions were comparatively unimportant.

Defoe was living at Newington with his wife and six children when he wrote *Robinson Crusoe*, and at the time it was published he was fifty-eight years of age. He wrote a number of other books afterward in the same general style. They were lives and adventures, memoirs and travels, each with an appearance of minute fidelity to facts — as if they were narrations of events that actually happened. These never pretended to be novels, and yet from them the modern novel has taken its rise. Heretofore there had been only romances and enchanted dames, or florid and clumsy stories of the loves of Arcadian shepherds and deserted princes, that were a tissue of affectation. Defoe opened a new field by painting men and manners as they were, by showing the folk of his own time exactly as he knew them.

Aside from his books, he was a most prolific writer on current topics. From the time of the Monmouth Rebellion to the very end of his life, the stream of controversial essays of all lengths from his pen was unceasing. He commented on every important event. In tone these social and political writings of his were dignified and self-respecting. They never descended to the personal abuse that was indulged in by all his rivals. He was clear, logical, direct; he upheld unflinchingly what he believed to be the truth, and utterly disregarded danger. In what he wrote he was never a partisan. He labored along his own straight path, now crossing the crooked course of one party, now that of the other. His view of the politics of his time and of his own attitude toward them was summed up in this sentence in one of his last essays — “It has been the disaster of all parties of this nation to be very hot in their turn, and as often



as they have been so, I have differed from them all, and ever must and shall do so."

Defoe's public life, as we have seen, was a troubled one. His home life had its bitter side, too, and his final days of feeble age and weakening health were sad and gloomy ones. His only son was ungrateful, and deserted and deceived him. "This injustice and unkindness," he writes to a friend in his last year, "has ruined my family and broken my heart." He died in 1731 at the age of seventy.

Such was the life of Daniel Defoe, a true patriot who fought courageously the battle for the rights of people in his day, but who is now best remembered as the author of the ever delightful story of Robinson Crusoe's lonely life on that tropical island at the mouth of the great river Orinoco.

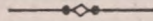




# THE LIFE AND ADVENTURES

OF

# ROBINSON CRUSOE



## CHAPTER I

Of my birth and education — My desire to go to sea — I go on board a ship bound for London — The ship is wrecked in a severe storm off Yarmouth and I barely escape with my life — I make my way by land from Yarmouth to London.

I WAS born in the year 1632, in the city of York, my father being a foreigner, of Bremen, who settled at Hull. He got a good estate by merchandise, and leaving off his trade, lived afterward at York, whence he had married my mother, whose relations were named Robinson. I was called Robinson Kreutznaer ; but, by the usual corruption of words in England, we are now called, nay, we call ourselves, and write our name, Crusoe.

I had two elder brothers, one of whom was lieutenant-colonel of an English regiment in Flanders,<sup>o</sup> and was killed at the battle near Dunkirk against the Spaniards. What became of my second brother I never knew.

Being the third son of the family, and not bred to any trade, my head began to be filled very early with rambling thoughts.



My father had given me a competent share of learning and designed me for the law ; but I would be satisfied with nothing but going to sea. He called me one morning into his chamber, where he was confined by the gout, and expostulated very warmly with me upon this subject. And he pressed me earnestly, and in the most affectionate manner, not to precipitate myself into miseries which Nature, and the station of life I was born in, seemed to have provided against ; that I was under no necessity of seeking my bread, and he would do well for me. To close all, he told me I had my elder brother for an example, to whom he had used the same earnest persuasions to keep him from going into the wars, but could not prevail, his young desires prompting him to run into the army, where he was killed ; and though he said he would not cease to pray for me, yet he would venture to say that if I did take this foolish step, God would not bless me.

I was sincerely affected with this discourse, and I resolved not to think of going abroad any more, but to settle at home according to my father's desire. But, alas ! a few days wore that all off. However, I did not act hastily, and I spoke to my mother at a time when I thought her a little more pleasant than ordinary, and told her that my thoughts were so entirely bent upon seeing the world that my father had better give me his consent than force me to go without it ; that I was now eighteen years old, and if I was to go apprentice to a trade, or clerk to an attorney, I was sure I should never serve out my time, but I should certainly run away from my master before my time was out, and go to sea ; and if she would speak to my father to let me go one voyage abroad, if I did not like it, I would go no more, and I would promise, by a double diligence, to recover the time that I had lost.

This put my mother into a great passion. She told me it would be to no purpose to speak to my father upon any such subject ; that he knew too well what was for my interest



to give his consent to anything so much for my hurt ; and that she wondered how I could think of any such thing, and that, if I would ruin myself, there was no help for me.

It was not till almost a year after this that I broke loose. In the meantime, I continued obstinately deaf to all proposals of settling to business, and frequently expostulated with my father and mother about their being so positively determined against what they knew my inclinations prompted me to. But being one day at Hull, a companion who was going by sea to London in his father's ship asked me to go with him. I consulted neither father nor mother, nor so much as sent them word ; but leaving them to hear as they might, on the 1st of September, 1651, I went on board the ship bound for London. Never any young adventurer's misfortunes, I believe, began sooner than mine. The ship was scarcely out of the Humber,<sup>o</sup> than the wind began to blow, and the sea to rise in a most frightful manner ; and, as I had never been at sea before, I was inexpressibly sick in body and terrified in mind. I began now seriously to reflect upon what I had done, and how justly I was overtaken by the judgment of Heaven for leaving my father's house, and abandoning my duty.

The storm increased, and I expected every wave would swallow us up, and in this agony of mind I made many vows and resolutions, that if it would please God to spare my life in this one voyage, if ever I got my foot upon dry land, I would go directly home to my father, and never set it into a ship again while I lived ; that I would take his advice, and never run myself into such miseries any more.

These wise and sober thoughts continued all the while the storm lasted, and indeed some time after. The next day the wind was abated and the sea calmer. However, I was very grave for all that day, being also a little seasick still ; but toward night the weather cleared up, the wind was quite over, and a charming, fine evening followed. The sun went down perfectly



clear, and rose so the next morning. Having a smooth sea, the sun shining upon it, the sight was, as I thought, the most delightful that ever I saw.

I had slept well in the night, and was no more sick, but very cheerful, looking with wonder upon the sea that was so rough and terrible two days before, and could be so calm and pleasant in so little a time after. And now, my companion, who had enticed me away, comes to me.

“Well, Bob,” says he, clapping me upon the shoulder, “how do you do after the capful of wind we’ve had?”

“A capful, do you call it?” said I. “’Twas a terrible storm.”

“A storm, you fool, you!” replies he; “do you call that a storm? why, it was nothing at all. Give us a good ship and sea-room, and we think nothing of such a squall of wind as that. You’re but a fresh-water sailor, Bob. Come, let us make a bowl of punch. D’ye see what charming weather ’tis now?”

To make short this part of my story, we went the way of all sailors; the punch was made, and I drowned all my repentance and all my resolutions for the future. I found, indeed, the serious thoughts did endeavor to return sometimes; but I shook them off, and roused myself from them as from a distemper, and applying myself to drinking and company, I had, in five or six days, got as complete a victory over my conscience as any young fellow that resolved not to be troubled with it could desire. But I was to have another trial for it still.

The sixth day of our being at sea we came into Yarmouth Roads.<sup>o</sup> Here we lay, the wind being contrary, for seven or eight days, during which time a great many ships from Newcastle came into the same Roads. The wind blew very hard. However, the Roads being reckoned as good as a harbor, our men were unconcerned, and not in the least apprehensive of danger, and spent the time in rest and mirth; but the eighth day, in the morning, the wind increased, and we had all hands at work to make everything snug and close, that the ship might



ride as easy as possible. By noon the waves went very high indeed, and we shipped several seas, and thought once or twice our anchor had come home.

It now blew a terrible storm, and I began to see terror and amazement in the faces even of the seamen themselves. The master, though vigilant in the business of preserving the ship, yet as he went in and out of his cabin by me, I heard him softly say to himself, several times, "Lord, be merciful to us! We shall be all lost! We shall be all undone!" and the like.

During the first hurries I was lying in the steerage, but when the master came by me and said we should be all lost, I was dreadfully frightened. I got up and looked out. Such a dismal sight I had never beheld. The sea ran mountains high, and broke upon us every three or four minutes, and I could see nothing but distress among the other vessels. The light-laden ships fared the best; but two or three of them drove, and came close by us, running before the wind.

Toward evening the mate and boatswain begged the master of our ship to let them cut away the foremast. He consented; and when they had cut away the foremast, the mainmast stood so loose, and shook the ship so much, they were obliged to cut that away also, and make a clear deck. But the worst was not come yet. The storm continued with such fury, that the seamen themselves acknowledged they had never encountered a worse. It was so violent that I saw, what is not often seen, the master, the boatswain, and some others at their prayers, and expecting every moment the ship would go to the bottom. In the middle of the night one of the men cried out we had sprung a leak. Another said, there was four feet of water in the hold. Then all hands were called to the pump. The men told me that I was as well able to pump as any one; at which I stirred up, and went to the pump, and worked very heartily. While this was doing, the master ordered a gun fired as a signal of distress. I, who knew nothing what they meant, thought the



ship had broken, or some dreadful thing happened, and I fell down in a swoon. As this was a time when everybody had his own life to think of, nobody minded me or what was become of me; but another man stepped up to the pump, and thrusting me aside with his foot, let me lie, thinking I was dead; and it was a great while before I came to myself.

We worked on; but the water increased in the hold, so the master continued firing guns for help; and a ship, just ahead, ventured a boat out to our relief. It was with the utmost hazard the boat came near us; but it was impossible for us to get on board, or for the boat to lie near the ship's side, till at last the men rowing very heartily, and risking their lives to save ours, our men cast them a rope over the stern with a buoy to it, which they took hold of, and we hauled them close under our stern, and got all into their boat. It was to no purpose for them, after we were in the boat, to think of reaching their own ship; so all agreed to let her drive, only to pull in toward shore as much as we could; and partly rowing, and partly driving, our boat went away to the northward.

We were not much more than a quarter of an hour out of our ship till we saw her sink, and then I understood for the first time what was meant by a ship foundering in the sea.

When our boat mounted the waves, we were able to see the shore and a great many people running along the strand, to assist us when we should come near. We made but slow way till, being past the lighthouse at Winterton, the land broke off a little the violence of the wind. Here we got all safe on shore, and walked on foot to Yarmouth, where, as unfortunate men, we were used with great humanity, and had money given us sufficient to carry us either to London or back to Hull, as we thought fit.

Had I had the sense to have gone to Hull, and then home, I had been happy, and my father had even killed the fatted calf for me; for hearing the ship I went away in was wrecked in



Yarmouth Roads, it was a great while before he had any assurance that I was not drowned. My comrade, who had helped to harden me before, and who was the master's son, was now less forward than I. The first time he spoke to me after we were at Yarmouth, which was not till two or three days, for we were separated in the town to several quarters, his tone was altered; and looking very melancholy, and shaking his head, he asked me how I did, and told his father who I was, and how I had come this voyage only for a trial, in order to go farther abroad. His father turning to me said with a very grave and concerned tone, "Young man, you ought never to go to sea any more; you ought to take this for a plain and visible token that you are not to be a sea-faring man."

"Why, sir," said I, "will you go to sea no more?"

"That is another case," said he; "it is my calling, and therefore my duty; but as you made this voyage for a trial, you see what a taste Heaven has given you of what you are to expect if you persist. Perhaps our disaster has befallen us on your account."

I told him some of my story; at the end of which he burst out into a strange kind of passion: "What had I done," says he, "that such an unhappy wretch should come into my ship? I would not set my foot in the same ship with thee again for a thousand pounds."

We parted soon after, for I made him little answer, and I saw him no more. As for me, having some money in my pocket, I travelled to London by land.



## CHAPTER II

I fall in with the master of a ship about to sail for the coast of Guinea, and I make a prosperous voyage with him—I start on a second voyage to Guinea, but the ship is taken by pirates—At the Moorish port of Sallee I live a captive for two years—On escaping I cruise for many days southward along the African coast until I am taken up by a Portuguese trader bound for the Brazils.

IT was my lot to fall into company in London with the master of a ship who had been on the coast of Guinea; and who, having had very good success there, was resolved to go again. Hearing me say I had a mind to see the world, he told me if I would go the voyage with him, I should be his mess-mate and his companion; and if I could carry any merchandise with me, I should have all the advantage of it that the trade would admit.

I embraced the offer; and entering into a strict friendship with this captain, I went the voyage with him, and carried about £40 worth of such toys and trifles as he directed me to buy. This £40 I had mustered by the assistance of some of my relations whom I corresponded with, and who, I believe, got my father to contribute so much to my first venture.

Under my friend the captain I got a competent knowledge of navigation, learned how to keep an account of the ship's course, and take an observation, and this voyage made me both a sailor and a merchant. I brought home gold-dust which yielded me in London almost £300.

I was now set up for a Guinea trader; and my friend, to my great misfortune, dying, I resolved to go the voyage again, in the same vessel with one who was his mate in the former voyage, and had now got the command of the ship. I did not carry quite £100 of my new-gained wealth, so that I had £200 left which I had lodged with my friend's widow. This voyage was very



unfortunate, for while our ship was making her course between the Canary Islands and the African shore, we were surprised in the gray of the morning by a Moorish rover of Sallee, who gave chase to us with all the sail he could make. We crowded also as much canvas as our yards would spread, or our masts carry, but finding the pirate gained on us, we prepared to fight; our ship having twelve guns, and the rogue eighteen. About three in the afternoon he came up with us, and bringing to, just athwart our quarter, we brought eight of our guns to bear and poured in a broadside upon him, which made him sheer off after returning our fire, and pouring in also his small-shot from nearly two hundred men he had on board. However, we had not a man touched. He prepared to attack us again, and we to defend ourselves; but this time he entered sixty men upon our decks. We plied them with small-shot, half-pikes, and such like, and cleared our deck of them twice. However, at length, our ship being disabled, and three of our men killed, and eight wounded, we were obliged to yield, and were carried prisoners into Sallee, a port belonging to the Moors.

The usage I had there was not so dreadful as at first I apprehended; nor was I carried up the country as the rest of our men were, but was kept by the captain of the rover and made his slave, being young and nimble, and fit for his business.

As my new patron, or master, had taken me home to his house, I was in hopes that he would take me with him when he went to sea again, believing that it would some time or other be his fate to be captured by a Spanish or Portuguese man-of-war; and that then I should be set at liberty. But this hope of mine was soon taken away; for when he went to sea, he left me on shore to look after his little garden, and do the common drudgery of slaves about his house.

After about two years, my patron being at home longer than usual without fitting out his ship, which, as I heard, was for want of money, he once or twice a week would take the ship's



pinnace, and go out fishing; and he always had me and a young Morisco<sup>o</sup> with him to row the boat. Sometimes he stayed at home himself and sent me with a Moor, one of his kinsmen, and the Morisco, to catch a dish of fish for him.

One time, going fishing with him in a calm morning, a fog rose so thick, that though we were not half a league from the shore, we lost sight of it; and rowing we knew not whither we labored all day, and all the next night; and when the morning came, we found we had pulled out to sea, and were at least two leagues from the land. However, we got well in again, though with a great deal of labor, and some danger; for the wind began to blow pretty fresh in the morning.

Our patron, warned by this disaster, resolved to take more care of himself for the future; and he resolved he would not go fishing any more without some provisions. Having lying by him the long-boat of our English ship, he ordered the carpenter of his ship, who was an English slave, to build a little cabin, in the middle of the long-boat, with a place to stand behind it to steer and haul home the main-sheet; and room before for a hand or two to stand and work the sails.

She sailed with what we call a shoulder-of-mutton sail; and the boom jibbed over the top of the cabin, which lay very snug and low, and had in it room for him to lie, with a slave or two, and a table to eat on, and lockers to put in some bottles of liquor and his bread, rice, and coffee.

It one day happened that he appointed to go out in this boat, either for pleasure or for fish, with two or three Moors of some distinction, and had therefore sent on board the boat a larger store of provisions than usual; and had ordered me to get ready three fusees<sup>o</sup> with powder and shot, which were on board his ship, for they designed some sport fowling as well as fishing.

I got all things ready as he had directed; and waited the next morning with the boat, when by and by my patron came on board alone, and told me his guests had put off going, and



ordered me, with the man and boy, to go out with the boat and catch some fish, and that his friends were to sup at his house.

This moment my former notions of deliverance darted into my thoughts, for now I found I was likely to have a little ship at my command; and my master being gone, I prepared to furnish myself, not for fishing business, but for a voyage; though I knew not, neither did I so much as consider, whither I would steer.

My first contrivance was to make a pretence to speak to the Moor, to get something for our subsistence on board; for I told him we must not presume to eat our patron's bread.

He said that was true; so he brought a large basket of rusk or biscuit, and three jars of fresh water, into the boat. I knew where my patron's case of bottles stood, and I conveyed them into the boat while the Moor was on shore. I conveyed also a great lump of beeswax into the boat, which weighed about half a hundredweight, and a parcel of twine, a hatchet, a saw, and a hammer, all of which were of great use afterward. Another trick I tried upon the Moor was to tell him our patron's guns were all on board the boat; and ask if he could get a little powder and shot from the gunner's stores in the ship. "Perhaps we may kill some ducks," said I.

Accordingly, he brought a great leather pouch, which held about a pound and a half of powder, and another filled with shot, and some bullets, and put all into the boat. Thus furnished with everything needful, we sailed out of the port. We went about a mile and hauled in our sail, and sat down to fish. The wind blew from the northeast, which was contrary to my desire; for had it blown southerly, I had been sure to have made the coast of Spain; but my resolutions were, blow which way it would, I would be gone from that horrid place where I was, and leave the rest to fate.

After we had fished some time and caught nothing, for when



I had a fish on my hook I would not pull it up, I said to the Moor, "This will not do. We must stand farther off."

He, thinking no harm, agreed, and, being in the head of the boat, set the sails; and, as I had the helm, I ran the boat out nearly a league farther, and then brought her to as if I would fish; when, giving the boy the helm, I stepped forward to where the Moor was, and making as if I stooped for something behind him, I took him by surprise, and tossed him clear overboard into the sea.

He rose immediately, and swam so strong after the boat, that he would have reached me very quickly, there being but little wind; upon which I stepped into the cabin, and fetching one of the fowling-pieces, I presented it at him and said, "You swim well, and the sea is calm; make the best of your way to shore, and I will do you no harm; but if you come near the boat, I'll shoot you, for I am resolved to have my liberty."

So he turned himself about, and swam for the shore, and I make no doubt he reached it with ease. When he was gone, I spoke to the boy, who was called Xury, and said to him, "Xury, if you will be faithful to me, I'll make you a great man; but if you will not be true to me, I must throw you into the sea too."

The boy smiled in my face, and spoke so innocently that I could not mistrust him, and he swore to be faithful to me and go all over the world with me.

While I was in the view of the Moor that was swimming, I stood out directly to sea. But as soon as it grew dusk in the evening, I steered south, bending my course a little toward the east, that I might keep in with the shore; and having a fair, fresh gale of wind, I made such sail that by the next day at three o'clock in the afternoon, when I first made the land, I could not have been less than one hundred and fifty miles south of Sallee; quite beyond the Emperor of Morocco's dominions. Yet such was the fright I had taken at the Moors, and the



dreadful apprehensions I had of falling into their hands, that I would not stop, or go on shore, till I had sailed five days. Then, the wind shifting to the southward, I concluded that if any vessels were in chase of me, they would now give over. So I ventured to anchor in the mouth of a little river, I knew not what nor where. I neither saw, nor desired to see any people. The principal thing I wanted was fresh water. We came into this creek in the evening, resolving to swim to shore as soon as it was dark; but when night came we heard such dreadful noises of the barking, roaring, and howling of wild creatures, that Xury was ready to die with fear, and begged me not to go on shore till day.

“Well, Xury,” said I, “then I won’t; but we may see men by day, who will be as bad to us as those lions.”

“Then we give them the shoot gun,” says Xury, laughing, “make them run way.”

I was glad to see the boy so cheerful. After all, Xury’s advice was good, and we lay still all night. But we slept none; for in two or three hours we saw vast great creatures of many sorts, come down to the seashore, and run into the water, wallowing and washing for the pleasure of cooling themselves, and making hideous howlings and yellings.

Xury was dreadfully frightened, and so was I, too; but we were both more frightened when we heard one mighty creature come swimming toward our boat; and we knew him by his blowing to be a huge and furious beast. Xury cried to me to pull up the anchor and row away. He had no sooner said so, but I perceived the creature, whatever it was, within two oars’ length. I immediately stepped to the cabin-door, and taking up my gun, fired at him; upon which he turned about, and swam toward the shore.

It is impossible to describe the horrid noises, and hideous cries and howlings that were raised, as well at the edge of the shore as higher within the country on the report of my gun, a



thing I believe those creatures had never heard before. This convinced me that there was no going on shore for us in the night upon that coast ; and how to venture on shore in the day was another question ; for to have fallen into the hands of the savages had been as bad as to have fallen into the paws of lions and tigers. Be that as it would, we were obliged to go on shore somewhere or other for water, for we had not a pint left in the boat. The next morning Xury said, if I would let him go on shore with one of the jars, he would find water, and bring some to me.

“Well, Xury,” said I, “we will both go ;” and we hauled the boat in as near the land as we thought was proper, and waded on shore, carrying our guns and two jars for water.

I did not care to go out of sight of the boat, fearing the coming of canoes with savages down the river ; but the boy, seeing a low place about a mile up the country, rambled to it, and by and by I saw him running toward me. I thought he was pursued by some savage, or frightened by some wild beast, and I ran to help him ; but when I came nearer I saw something hanging over his shoulders, which was a creature that he had shot, like a hare, but different in color. We were very glad of it, and it was good meat ; but the great joy Xury came with, was to tell me he had found water, and seen no wild mans.

We found afterward that we need not take such pains to get water, for a little higher up the creek where we had anchored, the water was fresh when the tide was out. So we filled our jars, and feasted on the hare we had killed, and prepared to go on our way, having seen no human creature in that part of the country.

By the best of my calculation, the place where I now was must be that country which lies waste and uninhabited, between the Emperor of Morocco's dominions and the negroes, the negroes having abandoned it, and gone farther south for fear of the Moors ; and the Moors not thinking it worth



inhabiting, by reason of its barrenness ; and no doubt both forsaking it because of the prodigious number of tigers, lions, leopards, and other furious creatures which harbor there. Indeed, for nearly a hundred miles together upon this coast, we saw nothing but a waste uninhabited country by day, and heard nothing but howlings and roarings of wild beasts by night.

Several times I was obliged to land for fresh water. Once in particular, being early in the morning, we came to anchor under a little point of land, which was pretty high ; and Xury, whose eyes were more about him than mine were, calls softly to me, and tells me that we had best go farther off the shore. "Look !" says he, "yonder lies a dreadful monster on the side of that hillock, fast asleep."

I looked where he pointed, and saw a terrible great lion that lay near the shore, under the shade of a bank that hung a little over him.

"Xury," says I, "you shall go on shore and kill him."

Xury looked frightened and said, "Me kill? he eat me at one mouth ;" one mouthful he meant.

I said no more to the boy, but took our biggest gun and loaded it with a good charge of powder, and with two slugs, and laid it down. Then I loaded another gun with two bullets ; and the third I loaded with five smaller bullets. I took the best aim I could with the first gun to shoot the lion in the head, but he lay so that the slugs hit his leg instead. He started up, growling, but fell down ; and then got up on three legs, and gave the most hideous roar that ever I heard. I took up the second piece immediately, and though he began to move off, fired again. This time he dropped and lay struggling for life. Then Xury took the third gun in one hand, jumped into the water, and swam to shore with the other hand, and going close to the creature, put the muzzle of the piece to his ear, and shot him, which dispatched him quite.



This was game to us, but no food ; and I was very sorry to lose three charges of powder and shot on a creature that was good for nothing to us. However, Xury said he would have some of him ; so he came on board, and asked me to give him the hatchet.

“For what, Xury ?” said I.

“Me cut off his head,” said he.

However, Xury could not cut off his head, but he cut off a foot, and brought it with him, and it was a monstrous great one.

I bethought myself that perhaps the skin might, one way or other, be of some value to us ; and I resolved to take it off if I could. So Xury and I went to work. We were at this task the whole day, but at last we got off the hide, and spreading it on the top of our cabin, the sun effectually dried it in two days' time, and it afterward served me to lie upon.

After this stop, we went on again to the southward, living very sparingly on our provisions, which began to abate very much. My design was to reach the Cape de Verd, where I was in hopes to meet with some European ship ; for I knew that all the ships from Europe which sailed either to the coast of Guinea or to Brazil, or to the East Indies, made this cape, or the Cape de Verd Islands. When I had sailed about ten days longer, I began to see that the land was inhabited ; and in two or three places, we saw people stand on the shore to look at us. We could also perceive they were quite black. I was once inclined to go on shore to them ; but Xury was my better counsellor, and said to me, “No go, no go.”

However, I hauled in nearer that I might talk to them, and they ran along the shore by me a good way. I observed they had no weapons in their hands, except one man, who had a long slender stick, which Xury said was a lance. I talked with them by signs as well as I could ; and particularly made signs for something to eat. They beckoned to me to stop my boat, and they would fetch me some meat. Upon this, I lowered the



top of my sail, and lay by, and two of them ran up into the country, and in less than half an hour came back, and brought with them two pieces of dried flesh and some corn. They were much afraid of us, for they brought this produce to the shore and laid it down, and went and stood a great way off till we fetched it on board.

We had nothing to make them amends; but an opportunity offered that very instant to oblige them wonderfully; for while we were lying by the shore there came two mighty creatures, one pursuing the other with great fury from the mountains toward the sea. Whether they were in sport or in rage, we could not tell. We found the people terribly frightened, especially the women. However the two creatures did not offer to fall upon any of the negroes, but plunged into the sea, and swam about, as if they had come for diversion. At last one of them began to come nearer our boat than at first I expected. I lay ready for him with my gun and as soon as he came fairly within my reach, I shot him. Immediately he plunged up and down, and made to the shore; but between the wound and the strangling of the water, he died just before he reached the land.

It is impossible to express the astonishment of the negroes at the noise and fire of my gun. But when they saw the creature dead, and sunk into the water, they took heart and by the help of a rope, which I slung round him, and gave the negroes to haul, they dragged him on shore. He was a most curious leopard, spotted and fine; and the negroes held up their hands with wonder to think what it was I killed him with.

The other creature, frightened with the gun, swam to the shore, and ran up directly to the mountains.

I found the negroes were for eating the flesh of the creature I had shot, so I made signs to them that they might have it. With a sharpened piece of wood, they took off his skin much more readily than we would have done with a knife. They offered me some of the flesh. I declined, but made signs for



the skin, which they gave me very freely, and brought me a great deal more of their provisions. Then I made signs for some water, and held out one of my jars, turning it bottom upward, to show that it was empty, and that I wanted to have it filled. They called to some of their friends, and two women brought water in a great vessel made of earth, and burnt as I suppose in the sun. This they set down for me, and I sent Xury on shore with my jars, and he filled them all three.

I was now furnished with food and water; and leaving my friendly negroes, I made forward for about eleven days more, till I saw the land run out a great length into the sea, at about the distance of four or five leagues before me. Doubling the point, I saw plainly islands to seaward. Then I concluded that this point was the Cape de Verd, and those islands the Cape de Verd Islands. However, they were at a great distance, and I could not tell what I had best do; for if I should be taken with a fresh gale of wind, I might neither reach one nor other.

In this dilemma, as I was very pensive, I stepped into the cabin, and sat me down, Xury having the helm; when, on a sudden, the boy cried out, "A ship with a sail!" and the foolish boy was frightened out of his wits, thinking it must needs be one of his master's ships sent to pursue us.

I jumped out of the cabin, and immediately saw that it was a Portuguese ship. But, when I observed the course she steered, I was soon convinced the ship's people did not design to go any nearer the shore, and I stretched out to sea, resolving to speak with them if possible.

With all the sail I could make, I found they would be gone before I could signal to them; but after I had crowded to the utmost, and began to despair, they saw me by the help of their perspective glasses, and shortened sail to let me come up. I was encouraged with this, and in about three hours' time I came up with them.



They asked me what I was, in Portuguese, and in Spanish, and in French, but I understood none of them. At last a Scotch sailor, who was on board, called to me ; and I answered him, and told him I was an Englishman, that had made my escape out of slavery from the Moors at Sallee. They then bade me come on board, and very kindly took me in, and all my goods.

It was an inexpressible joy to me that I was delivered from such a miserable and almost hopeless condition as I was in ; and I immediately offered all I had to the captain of the ship, as a return for my deliverance ; but he generously told me he would take nothing from me, and that all I had should be delivered safe to me, when I came to the Brazils. "For," says he, "I have saved your life on no other terms than as I would be glad to be saved myself. Besides, when I carry you to the Brazils, so great a way from your own country, if I should take from you what you have, you will be starved there. No, no, Signor Inglese (Mr. Englishman), I will carry you thither in charity."

My boat was a very good one ; and he told me he would buy it for the ship's use ; and asked me what I would have for it. I told him, he had been so generous to me in everything, that I could not make any price, but left it entirely to him : upon which, he told me he would give me eighty pieces of eight<sup>o</sup> for it. He offered me also sixty pieces of eight for my boy Xury ; but I was very loath to sell the liberty of the poor boy, who had assisted me so faithfully in procuring my own. However, when I let the captain know my reason, he owned it to be just, and offered me this medium, that he would give the boy an obligation to set him free in ten years, if he turned Christian. Upon this, and Xury saying he was willing to go to him, I let the captain have him.

We had a very good voyage to the Brazils, and I arrived in All Saints Bay, in about twenty-two days, and what to do next with myself I was to consider.



## CHAPTER III

I buy land in the Brazils and become a planter—In 1659, I begin a voyage to Africa after negroes—The ship is driven out of its course by storms and is wrecked on a strange coast—We launch the ship's boat, but it is overturned and I alone reach the land alive—My first day on the island and my visit to the ship—I make a raft and carry much goods to shore—I continue to go to the ship nearly every day for some time and bring away all I can.

THE generous treatment of the captain, I can never enough remember. He would take nothing for my passage, gave me twenty ducats<sup>o</sup> for the leopard's skin, and forty for the lion's skin, which I had in my boat, and caused everything I had in the ship to be punctually delivered to me. What I was willing to sell, he bought of me: such as the case of bottles, two of my guns, and a piece of the lump of beeswax, for I had made candles of the rest. In a word, I received about two hundred and twenty pieces of eight for my cargo; and with this I went on shore in the Brazils.

I had not been long there, but being recommended to the house of a good, honest man, who had a plantation and a sugar-house, I lived with him some time, and acquainted myself with the manner of planting sugar-cane and making sugar; and seeing how well the planters lived, and how they got rich, I resolved I would turn planter among them. To this purpose I purchased as much land as my money would allow, and formed a plan for my settlement.

I had a neighbor, a Portuguese, of Lisbon, in much such circumstances as I was, and we went on very sociably together, and formed a partnership. We planted rather for food than anything else, for about two years. However, we began to increase, and our land began to come into order; so that the third year we planted some tobacco, and made each of us a large piece of ground ready for planting sugar-canes in the year to come; but we both wanted help.



I was, in some degree, settled in my measures for carrying on the plantation, before my kind friend, the captain of the ship that took me up at sea, went back ; for the ship remained providing her lading, and preparing for the voyage, nearly three months. When I told him what money I had left behind me in London, he gave me this friendly and sincere advice : “Seignor Inglese,” says he (for so he always called me), “if you will give me letters, with orders to the person who has your money, to send your effects to Lisbon, in such goods as are proper for this country, I will bring them, God willing, at my return ; but, since human affairs are all subject to changes and disasters, I would have you give orders but for one hundred pounds, which, you say, is half your stock ; so that, if it miscarry, you may have the other half to have recourse to for your supply.”

This was so wholesome advice that I could not but be convinced it was the best course I could take. I accordingly wrote the English captain’s widow a full account of all my adventures, my slavery, escape, and how I had met with the Portuguese captain at sea, and what condition I was now in ; and when this honest captain came to Lisbon, he found means to send over the order and a full account of my story to a merchant in London, who represented it effectually to her ; whereupon she not only delivered the money, but out of her own pocket sent the Portuguese captain a handsome present for his humanity and charity to me.

This merchant in London invested my hundred pounds in English goods, such as the captain had written for, sent them directly to him at Lisbon, and he brought them all safe to me to the Brazils ; among which he had taken care to have all sorts of tools, iron work, and utensils necessary for my plantation, and which were of great use to me.

When this cargo arrived, I thought my fortune made ; and my good steward the captain had laid out the five pounds,



which my friend had sent him for himself, to purchase and bring me over a servant, under bond for six years' service, and would not accept of any consideration, except a little tobacco of my own producing.

My goods being all particularly valuable and desirable in the country, I found means to sell them at a very great advantage; so that I had more than four times the value of my first cargo, and I bought me a negro slave, and a European servant also — I mean another besides that which the captain brought me from Lisbon.

I lived almost four years in the Brazils, and learned the language, and contracted friendship among my fellow-planters, and among the merchants at St. Salvadore, which was our port. I had frequently given them an account of my two voyages to the coast of Guinea, the manner of trading there, and how easy it was to purchase for trifles, such as beads, toys, knives, scissors, hatchets, bits of glass, and the like, not only gold-dust, elephants' tusks, etc., but negroes. They listened always very attentively to my discourses, especially to that part which related to the buying negroes; which was a trade, at that time, not far entered into, so that negroes were excessively dear.

It happened, being in company one day with some merchants and planters of my acquaintance, and talking of those things, three of them came to me the next morning, and told me they had been musing very much upon what I had discoursed, and they had a mind to fit out a ship to go to Guinea; that they were straitened for nothing so much as servants; and if I would go in the ship, to manage the trading part, I should have my equal share of the negroes, without providing any part of the stock.

This was a fair proposal, it must be confessed, had it been made to any one that had not a plantation of his own to look after, which was in a fair way of coming to be very considerable. But for me, that was thus established, to think of such a voy-



age was the most preposterous thing that ever man in such circumstances could be guilty of. But I told them I would go, if they would undertake to look after my plantation in my absence. This they engaged to do.

The ship being fitted out, and the cargo furnished, and all things done as by agreement by my partners in the voyage, I went on board the 1st of September, 1659, being exactly eight years since I went from my father and mother at Hull. Our ship was about one hundred and twenty tons burden, carried six guns, and fourteen men, including the master, his boy, and myself.

The same day I went on board we set sail, standing away to the northward,<sup>o</sup> with design to stretch over for the African coast when we came to about ten or twelve degrees of northern latitude; which was the manner of the course in those days. We had very good weather, only excessively hot, all the way upon our own coast, till we came to Cape St. Augustino. Then keeping farther off at sea, we lost sight of land, holding our course northeast. In this course we were in seven degrees twenty-two minutes northern latitude, when a violent hurricane took us quite out of our knowledge. It began from the southeast, came about to the northwest, and then settled into the northeast; whence it blew in such a terrible manner, that for twelve days together we could do nothing but drive, and, scudding away before it, let it carry us wherever fate and the fury of the winds directed; and during these twelve days, I expected every day to be swallowed up; nor did any in the ship expect to save their lives.

Besides the terror of the storm, one of our men died of fever, and a man and the boy were washed overboard. About the twelfth day, the weather abating a little, the master made an observation as well as he could, and found that he was in eleven degrees of north latitude, but that he was twenty-two degrees of longitude west from Cape St. Augustino; so that he



was on the north part of Brazil, toward the river Oroonoko. The ship was leaky, and very much disabled, and looking over the charts of the seacoast of America, we concluded there was no inhabited country for us to have recourse to till we came within the circle of the Caribbee Islands.° Therefore we resolved to stand away for Barbadoes; which we might easily reach, as we hoped, in about fifteen days' sail; whereas we could not possibly make our voyage to the coast of Africa without some assistance both to our ship and to ourselves.

With this design we changed our course, and steered away northwest; but a second storm came upon us, which carried us westward, and drove us out of the way of all human commerce.

In this distress, the wind still blowing very hard, one of our men early one morning cried out, "Land!" and we had no sooner run out of the cabin to look than the ship struck on the sand. The sea broke over her in such a manner that we expected we should all perish immediately, and were driven into our close quarters, to shelter us from the foam and spray.

It is not easy for any one who has not been in the like condition to conceive the consternation of men in such circumstances. We sat expecting death every moment, and each man acting accordingly, as preparing for another world; for there was little or nothing more for us to do in this. That which was our present comfort, and all the comfort we had, was that, contrary to our expectation, the ship did not break yet.

We had a boat at our stern just before the storm, but she was staved by dashing against the ship's rudder. We had another boat on board, but how to get her off into the sea was a doubtful thing. However, we fancied the ship would break in pieces every minute, and the mate of our vessel laid hold of the boat, and with the help of the rest of the men, got her flung over the ship's side; and getting all into her, we let go, and



committed ourselves, being eleven in number, to God's mercy and the wild sea.

We worked at the oars toward the land, though with heavy hearts, like men going to execution. What the shore was, whether rock or sand, whether steep or shoal, we knew not. The only hope that could rationally give us the least shadow of expectation was, if we might happen into some bay, or the mouth of some river, we could get under the lee of the land, and perhaps make smooth water. But there was nothing of this appeared.

After we had rowed, or rather driven, about a league and a half, as we reckoned, a raging wave, mountain-like, came rolling astern of us, and took us with such a fury that it overset the boat; and we were all swallowed up in a moment.

Nothing can describe the confusion of thought which I felt, when I sank into the water; for though I swam very well, yet I could not deliver myself from the water so as to draw breath, till the wave having carried me a vast way toward the shore, and having spent itself, went back, and left me on land almost dry, but half dead with the water I took in. I had so much presence of mind, as well as breath left, that seeing myself nearer the mainland than I expected, I got on my feet, and made on toward it as fast as I could, before another wave should return; but I soon saw the sea come after me as high as a great hill. My business was to hold my breath, and by swimming to pilot myself toward the shore if possible, my greatest concern now being, that the wave, as it would carry me toward the shore when it came on, might not carry me with it when it gave back toward the sea.

The wave that came upon me buried me at once twenty or thirty feet deep in its own body, and I could feel myself carried with a mighty force and swiftness toward the shore. I was ready to burst with holding my breath, when I found my head and hands shoot out above the surface of the water; and though



it was not two seconds of time that I could keep myself so, yet it relieved me greatly, and gave me breath and new courage. I was covered again with water a good while, but not so long but I held out ; and finding the water had spent itself, I struck forward against its return, and felt ground again with my feet. I stood still a few moments to recover breath, and till the waters went from me, and then took to my heels, and ran with what strength I had, farther toward the shore. But neither would this deliver me from the fury of the sea, which came pouring in after me again ; and twice more I was lifted by the waves and carried forward as before, the shore being very flat.

The last time of these two had well-nigh been fatal to me ; for the sea having hurried me along, dashed me against a rock with such force it left me senseless, and indeed helpless, as to my own deliverance ; for the blow taking my side and breast, beat the breath quite out of my body. But I recovered a little before the return of the waves, and seeing I should be covered again with water, I resolved to hold fast by a piece of the rock, and as the waves were not so high as at first, being nearer land, I held my hold till the wave abated, and then fetched another run, which brought me so near the shore, that the next wave, though it went over me, yet did not so swallow me up as to carry me away ; and the next run I took, I got to the mainland ; where, to my great comfort, I clambered up the cliffs of the shore, and sat down on the grass, free from danger, and quite out of the reach of the water.

I was now landed, and began to look up and thank God that my life was saved, in a case wherein there was some minutes before scarce any room to hope. I walked about on the shore, wrapt up in the contemplation of my deliverance, and reflecting on all my comrades that were drowned. I never saw them afterward, or any sign of them, except three of their hats, one cap, and two shoes that were not fellows.

After I had solaced my mind with the comfortable part of



my condition, I looked round me, to see what kind of place I was in, and what was next to be done : and I soon found I had a dreadful deliverance : for I was wet, had no clothes to shift me, nor anything either to eat or drink ; neither did I see any prospect but that of perishing with hunger, or being devoured by wild beasts. I had no weapon to hunt and kill any creature for my sustenance, or to defend myself against any creatures that might desire to kill me for theirs. I had nothing about me but a knife and a little tobacco in a box. This was all my provision ; and this threw me into terrible agonies of mind, that for a while I ran about like a madman. Night coming on, I began, with a heavy heart, to consider what would be my lot if there were any ravenous beasts in that country, seeing at night they always come abroad for their prey.

All the remedy that offered to my thoughts was to get up into a thick, bushy tree, which grew near me, where I resolved to sit all night. I walked about a furlong from the shore, to see if I could find any fresh water to drink, which I did, to my great joy ; and having drunk, and put a little tobacco in my mouth to prevent hunger, I went to the tree, and getting up into it, endeavored to place myself so that I might not fall. I cut a short stick for my defence, and being excessively fatigued, I fell fast asleep, and slept as comfortably as, I believe, few could have done in my condition.

When I waked it was broad day, the weather clear, and the storm abated, so that the sea did not rage and swell as before ; but that which surprised me most was, that the ship was lifted off by the tide from the sand where she had struck and was driven up almost as far as the rock where I had been so bruised by dashing against it. This being within about a mile from the shore, and the ship seeming to stand upright still, I wished myself on board, that I might save some necessary things for my use.

I came down from the tree, and looked about me again, and



the first thing I noticed was the boat, which lay, as the wind and sea had tossed her upon the land, about two miles on my right hand. I walked as far as I could on the shore to get to her; but found between me and the boat an inlet of water which was about half a mile broad. So I came back for the present, being more intent upon getting at the ship, where I hoped to find something for my subsistence.

A little after noon I found the sea very calm, and the tide ebbed so far out, that I could go within a quarter of a mile of the ship. And here I found a fresh renewing of my grief; for I saw evidently that, if we had kept on board, we had been all safe; that is to say, we had all got safe on shore, and I had not been so miserable as to be left entirely destitute of all comfort and company, as I now was. This forced tears to my eyes. To get to the ship I pulled off the heaviest of my clothes, and took to the water. But when I came to the ship, my difficulty was to know how to get on board; for she lay aground, and high out of the water. I swam round her twice, and the second time I espied a piece of rope, which I wondered I did not see at first, hanging down by the fore-chains. With great difficulty I got hold of it, and by the help of that rope climbed up into the fore-castle. I found that the ship had a great deal of water in her hold; but that she lay so on the side of a bank of hard sand, that her stern was lifted up on the bank, and her head low, almost to the water. By this means all her after-part was dry, and I found that all the ship's provisions were untouched by the water. I went to the bread-room, and filled my pockets with biscuit, and ate it as I went about, for I had no time to lose. Now I wanted nothing but a boat, to furnish myself with many things which I foresaw would be very necessary to me.

It was in vain to sit still and wish for what was not to be had; and this extremity roused my application. We had several spare yards and a spare topmast or two in the ship. I



resolved to fall to work with them, and I flung as many of them overboard as I could manage for their weight, tying every one with a rope, that they might not drive away. When this was done, I went down the ship's side, and pulling them to me, I tied four of them together at both ends, in the form of a raft, and laying two or three short pieces of plank on them, cross-ways, I found I could walk on it very well, but that it was not able to bear any great weight, the pieces being too light. So with the carpenter's saw I cut a spare topmast into three lengths, and added them to my raft, with a great deal of labor and pains.

My raft was now strong enough to bear any reasonable weight. My next care was what to load it with, and how to preserve what I laid on it from the surf of the sea. I first laid all the planks or boards on it that I could get, and having considered well what I most wanted, I got three of the seamen's chests, which I had broken open and emptied, and lowered them down on my raft. The first of these I filled with bread, rice, three Dutch cheeses, and five pieces of dried goat's flesh which we lived much upon. As for liquors, I found several cases of bottles belonging to our skipper. These I stowed by themselves. While I was doing this, I found the tide began to flow, though very calm; and I had the mortification to see my coat, shirt, and waistcoat, which I had left on shore upon the sand, float away. As for my breeches, which were only linen, and open-kneed, I swam on board in them. This put me rummaging for clothes, of which I found enough, but took no more than I wanted for present use, for I had other things which my eye was more upon. After long searching I found the carpenter's chest, which was a very useful prize to me, and much more valuable than a ship-lading of gold would have been at that time. I got it down to my raft, whole as it was, without losing time to look into it, for I knew in general what it contained.

My next care was for some ammunition and arms. There



were two very good fowling-pieces in the great cabin, and two pistols. These I secured, with some powder-horns, a small bag of shot, and two old rusty swords. With much search I found three barrels of gunpowder. One of them had taken water, but the other two were dry and good, and I got them to my raft, with the arms. Now I thought myself pretty well freighted, and began to think how I should get to shore.

I had three encouragements: first, a smooth sea; secondly, the tide rising, and setting in to the shore; thirdly, what little wind there was blew me toward the land. Having found some broken oars belonging to the boat, with this cargo I put to sea. My raft went very well, only that it drove a little distant from the place where I had landed before; by which I perceived there was some indraft of the water, and I guided my raft as well as I could, to keep in the middle of the stream.

But here I had like to have suffered a second shipwreck, which, if I had, I think verily would have broken my heart. My raft ran aground at one end on a shoal, and not being aground at the other end, it wanted but a little that all my cargo had slipped off into the water. I did my utmost, by setting my back against the chests, to keep them in their places; neither durst I stir from the posture I was in till the rising of the water brought the raft more on a level. Then I thrust off into the channel, and soon found myself in the mouth of a little river, with a strong tide running up. I looked on both sides for a proper place to get to shore, for I was not willing to be driven too high up the river; hoping in time to see some ship at sea, and therefore resolved to place myself as near the coast as I could.

At length I spied a little cove on the right shore of the creek, to which I guided my raft, and got so near that, reaching ground with my oar, I could thrust the raft directly in. But there was no place to land, except where one end of my float, if it ran on shore, would lie so high that it would endanger my



cargo. All that I could do was to wait till the tide was at the highest, keeping the raft fast to the shore, near a flat piece of ground, which I expected the water would flow over; and so it did. As soon as I found water enough, I thrust the raft on that flat piece of ground, and moored her, by sticking my two broken oars into the ground — one on one side, near one end, and one on the other side, near the other end. Thus I lay till the water ebbed away and left my raft and all my cargo safe on shore.

Where I was I yet knew not; whether on the continent or an island; whether it was inhabited or not inhabited; whether I was in danger of wild beasts or not. There was a hill a mile from me, which rose very steep and high. I took out one of the fowling-pieces, and one of the pistols, and a horn of powder; and thus armed, I travelled for discovery up to the top of that hill, where I saw my fate. I was in an island, and no land was to be seen except some rocks a great way off, and two small islands which lay about three leagues to the west.°

The island I was in was apparently uninhabited, except by wild beasts. I saw abundance of fowls, but knew not their kinds; neither could I tell which was fit for food, and which not. At my coming back, I shot a great bird, which I saw sitting on a tree. I believe it was the first gun that had been heard there since the creation of the world. I had no sooner fired, but from all the parts of the wood there arose an innumerable number of fowls of many sorts, making a confused screaming and crying. As for the creature I killed, its flesh was carrion, and fit for nothing.

I came back to my raft, and fell to work to bring my cargo on shore, which took the rest of the day. What to do with myself at night I knew not, nor indeed where to rest. However, as well as I could, I barricaded myself round with the chests and boards that I had brought on shore, and made a kind of hut for that night's lodging.



I now began to consider that I might yet get a great many things out of the ship, which would be useful to me, and particularly some of the rigging and sails, and I resolved to make another voyage to the vessel, as I knew that the first storm that blew must necessarily break her all in pieces. To take back the raft appeared impracticable: so I swam as before, having nothing on but a checkered shirt and a pair of linen drawers.

I got on board the ship and prepared a second raft. In the carpenter's stores I found two or three bags full of nails and spikes, a great screw-jack, a dozen or two of hatchets, and that most useful thing called a grindstone. All these I secured, together with two or three iron crows,<sup>o</sup> and two barrels of musket bullets, seven muskets, and another fowling-piece, with some small quantity of powder, a large bagful of small shot, and a great roll of sheet lead; but this last was so heavy I could not hoist it up to get it over the ship's sides. Besides, I took all the men's clothes that I could find, and a spare fore-topsail, a hammock, and some bedding; and brought them all safe to the shore.

I was under some apprehension, during my absence from the land, that my provisions might be devoured on shore; but when I came back, I found no sign of any visitor; only there sat a creature like a wildcat on one of the chests, which when I went toward it, ran away a little distance, and then stood still. She sat very composed and looked full in my face, as if she had a mind to be acquainted with me. I presented my gun at her, but, as she did not understand it, she was perfectly unconcerned, nor did she offer to stir; upon which I tossed her a bit of biscuit. She went to it, smelled at it, and ate it, and looked for more; but I could spare no more. So she marched off.

Having got my second cargo on shore, I went to work to make a little tent, with the sail, and some poles which I cut for that purpose; and into this tent I brought everything that



I knew would spoil either with rain or sun ; and I piled all the empty chests and casks up in a circle round the tent, to fortify it from any sudden attempt, either from man or beast. When I had done this, I blocked up the door of the tent with some boards ; and spreading one of the beds on the ground, laying my two pistols just at my head, and my gun at length by me, I slept quietly all night, for I was very weary.

I had the biggest magazine of all kinds now that ever was laid up, I believe, for one man ; but still I was not satisfied, for while the ship sat upright I thought I ought to get everything out of her that I could. So every day, at low water, I went on board. I brought away much of the rigging, the small ropes and rope-twine, and the barrel of wet gunpowder. Last of all, after I had made five or six voyages, and thought I had nothing more to expect from the ship that was worth my meddling with, I found a great hogshead of bread, a box of sugar, and a barrel of fine flour. This was surprising to me, because I had given over expecting any more provisions except what was spoiled by the water. I soon emptied the hogshead of bread, and wrapped it up, parcel by parcel, in pieces of the sails ; and I got all this safe on shore also.

The next day I made another voyage, and plundered the ship of two cables and a hawser and considerable ironwork ; and having cut down the spritsail-yard and the mizzen-yard, and everything I could to make a large raft, I loaded it with all those heavy goods and came away. But this raft was so unwieldy, and so overladen, that after I had entered the little cove, where I had landed the rest of my goods, not being able to guide it handily, it overset, and threw me and all my cargo into the water. As for myself, it was no great harm, for I was near the shore ; but my cargo was great part lost, especially the iron, which I expected would have been of great use to me. However, when the tide was out, I got most of the pieces of cable ashore, and some of the iron, though with infinite labor ;



for I was compelled to dive for it into the water, a work which fatigued me very much.

I believe, had the calm weather held, I would have brought away the whole ship, piece by piece. The twelfth time I went on board, though I had rummaged the cabin very effectually, yet I discovered a locker with drawers in it, in one of which I found two or three razors, and one pair of large scissors, with ten or a dozen good knives and forks. In another drawer I found about thirty-six pounds' value in money — some gold, and some silver. I smiled to myself at the sight of this money. "Oh, drug!" said I aloud, "what art thou good for? One of those knives is worth all this heap; I have no manner of use for thee. E'en remain where thou art, and go to the bottom, as a creature whose life is not worth saving."

However, on second thoughts, I took it away. I began to think of making another raft; but while I was preparing it, I found the sky overcast, and the wind began to rise, and in a quarter of an hour blew a fresh gale from the shore. It presently occurred to me that it was in vain to make a raft with the wind offshore; and that it was my business to be gone before the tide of flood, otherwise I might not be able to reach the shore at all. Accordingly, I let myself down into the water, and swam across the channel which lay between the ship and the sands, and even that with difficulty enough, partly with the weight of the things I had about me, and partly from the roughness of the water; for the wind rose very hastily, and it blew hard all that night.



## CHAPTER IV

I seek a place where I can make my dwelling — Having pitched my tent and fortified it, I dig a cave — A thunderstorm frights me with the thought that the lightning might explode all my powder — I separate the powder into small parcels and bestow it in a number of different places — Of how I killed goats for my food, and of how I kept a reckoning of time by cutting notches on a post.

My thoughts were now employed about securing myself against savages, if any should appear, or wild beasts, if any were in the island; and I had many thoughts of the method how to do this, and what kind of dwelling to make — whether I should make me a cave in the earth, or a tent on the earth. The place I was in was not fit for my settlement, because it was on low ground near the sea, and I believed would not be wholesome. I consulted several things: first, health and fresh water; secondly, shelter from the heat of the sun; thirdly, security from ravenous creatures, whether man or beast; fourthly, a view to the sea, that if God sent a ship in sight, I might not lose any advantage for my deliverance. In search of a proper place, I found a little plain on the side of a rising hill. The front of the hill toward this little plain was of rock as steep as a house-side, so that nothing could come down on me from the top. On the side of the rock there was a hollow place, worn a little way in, like the entrance of a cave; but there was not really any cave at all.

On the flat of the green, just below the hollow place, I resolved to pitch my tent. This plain was not more than a hundred yards broad, and about twice as long, and descended irregularly every way down into the low ground by the sea. It was on the northwest side of the hill; so that it was sheltered from the heat every day, till the sun was near the setting.

Before I pitched my tent,° I drew a half-circle before the hollow place, which took in about ten yards in its semi-diameter



from the rock. In this half-circle I set two rows of strong stakes, driving them into the ground till they stood very firm like piles, the biggest end being out of the ground above five feet and a half, and sharpened on the top. The two rows did not stand more than six inches from one another.

Then I took pieces of cable which I had brought from the ship, and laid them in rows, upon one another, between the two rows of stakes, up to the top, placing other stakes inside, leaning against them, about two feet and a half high, like a spur to a post; and the fence was so strong that neither man nor beast could get through it or over it. This cost me a great deal of time and labor, especially to cut the piles in the woods, bring them to the place, and drive them into the earth.

The entrance I made to be, not by a door, but by a short ladder to go over the top. When I was in, I lifted the ladder over after me; and so I was completely fenced in and fortified, as I thought, from all the world, and consequently slept secure in the night, which otherwise I could not have done.

Inside this fence, or fortress, I carried all my provisions, ammunition, and stores; and I made a large tent also, to preserve me from the rains, that in one part of the year are very violent there. I made it double — one smaller tent within, and one larger tent above it; and now I lay no more for a while in the bed which I had brought on shore, but in a hammock, which was indeed a very good one, and belonged to the mate of the ship.

In the tent I stowed my provisions, and everything that would spoil by the wet; and having thus enclosed all my goods, I closed the entrance, which till now I had left open, and passed and repassed, as I said, by a short ladder.

When I had done this, I began to work my way into the rock, and bringing all the earth and stones that I dug, out through my tent, I laid them up within my fence, in the nature of a terrace, that raised the ground within about a foot and a



half. Thus I made me a cave, just behind my tent, which served me like a cellar to my house.

It cost me much labor and many days before all these things were brought to perfection ; and therefore I must go back to other things which took up some of my thoughts. After I had laid my scheme for the setting up the tent, and making the cave, a storm of rain fell from a thick, dark cloud, and there was a sudden flash of lightning, and after that, a great clap of thunder. I was not so much surprised with the lightning, as I was with the thought which darted into my mind as swift as the lightning itself. "Oh, my powder !"

My very heart sank within me, when I thought that, at one blast, all my powder might be destroyed. I was nothing near so anxious about my own danger ; though, had the powder taken fire, I had never known what had hurt me.

Such impression did this make that, after the storm was over, I laid aside all my building and fortifying, and applied myself to make bags and boxes to separate my powder, and to keep it a little in a parcel, that whatever happened it might not all take fire at once ; and to keep it so apart that it should not be possible to make one part fire another. I finished this work in about a fortnight ; and I think my powder, which in all was about one hundred and forty pounds' weight, was divided into no less than a hundred parcels. As to the barrel that had been wet, I did not apprehend any danger from that. So I placed it in my new cave, which I called my kitchen ; and the rest I hid up and down in holes among the rocks, so that no wet might come to it, marking very carefully where I had laid it.

In the interval of time while this was doing, I went out at least once every day with my gun, as well to divert myself, as to see if I could kill anything fit for food, and to acquaint myself with what the island produced. The first time I went out, I discovered there were goats in the island, which was a great satisfaction to me ; but they were so shy, and so swift of



foot, that it was the most difficult thing in the world to come at them ; but I was not discouraged, not doubting that I might now and then shoot one, as it soon happened.

The first shot I made among these creatures I killed a she-goat, which had a little kid by her. When the old one fell, the kid stood stock still by her, till I came and took her up ; and when I carried the old one off on my shoulders, the kid followed me quite to my enclosure. I laid down the dam, and took the kid in my arms, and carried it over my pale, in hopes to breed it up tame ; but it would not eat. So I was forced to kill it and eat it myself. These two supplied me with flesh a great while, for I ate sparingly, and saved my provisions, my bread especially, as much as I possibly could.

As I was not cast away without being driven by a violent storm a great way out of the ordinary course of the trade of mankind, I had reason to consider it as a determination of Heaven that in this desolate place I should end my life. The tears would run plentifully down my face when I made these reflections.

It was the 30th of September when I first set foot upon this horrid island. After I had been there ten or twelve days, it came into my thoughts that I should lose my reckoning of time, and should even forget the Sabbath-day. To prevent this, I cut a large post, and making it into a great cross, I set it up on the shore where I first landed. Upon this post I cut every day a notch with my knife, and every seventh notch was as long again as the rest, and every first day of the month as long again as that long one ; and thus I kept my calendar.

Among the many things I brought from the ship in the several voyages I made to it, I got several things I omitted setting down before ; as, in particular, pens, ink, and paper, three or four compasses, some mathematical instruments, perspectives, charts, and books of navigation. Also I found three very good Bibles and several other books ; all which I carefully secured. And I must not forget that we had in the



ship a dog and two cats. I carried both cats to land ; and the dog jumped out of the ship of himself and swam on shore to me the day after I went on shore with my first cargo, and was a trusty servant to me many years. I wanted numerous things, notwithstanding all that I had amassed ; such as a spade, pick-axe, and shovel, to dig or remove the earth ; needles, pins, and thread. This want of tools made work go on heavily ; and it was nearly a whole year before I had entirely finished my surrounded habitation. The piles or stakes, which were as heavy as I could well lift, were a long time in cutting and preparing in the woods, and more, by far, in bringing home ; so that I spent sometimes two days in cutting and bringing home one of those posts, and a third day in driving it into the ground ; for which purpose I used a heavy piece of wood. But why need I have been concerned at the tediousness of anything I had to do, seeing I had time enough to do it in ? nor had I any other employment, except ranging the island to seek for food, which I did, more or less, every day.

I now began to consider seriously my condition, and I drew up the state of my affairs in writing, to deliver my thoughts from daily poring upon them, and as my reason began now to master my despondency, I began to comfort myself as well as I could, and to set the good against the evil, that I might have something to distinguish my case from worse, and I stated it very impartially, like debtor and creditor, the comfort I enjoyed, against the miseries I suffered, thus :

## EVIL

I am cast upon a horrible, desolate island.

I am singled out and separated from all the world, to be miserable.

I am divided from mankind, banished from human society.

I have no clothes to cover me.

## GOOD

But I am alive ; and not drowned, as all my ship's company was.

But I am singled out, too, from all the ship's crew, to be spared from death.

But I am not starved and perishing on a barren place, affording no sustenance.

But I am in a hot climate, where if I had clothes I could hardly wear them.



I am without defence, or means to resist any violence of man or beast.

I have no soul to speak to or relieve me.

But I am cast on an island where I see no wild beasts to hurt me, as I saw on the coast of Africa; and what if I had been shipwrecked there?

But God wonderfully sent the ship in near enough to the shore, that I have got out so many necessary things as will either supply my wants or enable me to supply myself, even as long as I live.

Upon the whole, here was an undoubted testimony that scarce any condition in the world was so miserable, but there was something to be thankful for in it.

My habitation<sup>o</sup> was a tent under the side of a rock, surrounded with a strong pale of posts and cables; but I might now rather call the pale a wall, for I piled up against it turfs, about two feet thick on the outside: and after some time I raised rafters from it, leaning to the rock, and thatched the whole with boughs of trees, and such things as I could get to keep out the rain. I brought all my goods into this pale, and into the cave. At first they were a confused heap, which took up all my place. I had no room to turn. So I set myself to enlarge my cave. It was in a loose, sandy rock, which yielded easily to the labor I bestowed on it; and when I found I was pretty safe as to beasts of prey, I worked sideways, to the right into the rock; and then turning to the right again, worked quite out, and made me a door on the outside of my fortification.

This gave me not only a back way to my tent and to my storehouse, but room to stow my goods.

Now I began to make such things as I found I most wanted. I had never handled a tool in my life; and yet in time, by labor, application, and contrivance, I made abundance of things, which, perhaps, were never made that way before. If I wanted a board, I cut down a tree, and hewed it flat on either side with my axe till I had brought it to be thin, and then dubbed it smooth with my adze. By this method I could



make only one board out of a whole tree; but this I had no remedy for but patience, any more than I had for the prodigious deal of time and labor which it took; but my time and labor were of little worth, and so were as well employed one way as another.

When I had wrought out some boards, I made large shelves, of the breadth of a foot and a half, one over another, all along one side of my cave, on which to lay my tools, nails, and iron-work; and I drove pegs into the wall of the rock, that I might hang up my guns and other things. It was a great pleasure to me to see all my goods in such order, and especially to find my stock of necessaries so great.

Now it was that I began to keep a journal of every day's employment; for, at first, I was in too much hurry, and in too much discomposure of mind. But having gotten over these things in some measure, and having settled my household stuff and habitation, I began my journal, of which I here give the copy as long as it lasted; for finally having no more ink, I was forced to leave it off.

## CHAPTER V

Of my work day by day — I am greatly astonished to find some stalks of rice and barley springing up near my dwelling — An earthquake nearly destroys my cave — The wrecked ship is heaved up in a new posture and I bring many more things out of it — I have a violent attack of ague — In a chest where I had stowed various articles I find a Bible, and the reading of it greatly comforts me.

### THE JOURNAL

*September* 30, 1659. — I, poor miserable Robinson Crusoe, being shipwrecked during a dreadful storm came on shore on this dismal island, which I called "The Island of Despair"; all the



rest of the ship's company being drowned, and myself almost dead.

Having vomited with the great quantity of salt water which was gotten into my stomach, I ran about the shore, wringing my hands and beating my head, exclaiming at my misery, and crying out, "I am undone, undone!" until tired and faint I was forced to lie down on the ground.

*From the 1st of October to the 24th.* — All these days spent in many voyages to get all I could out of the ship. Much rain, though with some intervals of fair weather; but it seems this was the rainy season.

Sometimes I could not forbear getting up to the top of a little mountain and looking out to sea, in hopes of seeing a ship, then fancy at a vast distance I spied a sail, please myself with hopes of it, and after looking steadily till I was almost blind, lose it quite, and sit down and weep like a child.

*October 26.* — I walked about the shore almost all day, to find a place for my habitation. Toward night I fixed upon a proper place, under a rock.

From the 26th to the 30th, I worked in carrying all my goods to my new habitation, though some part of the time it rained exceeding hard.

*November 3.* — I went out with my gun, and killed two fowls like ducks, which were very good food.

*November 4.* — I began to order my times of work, time of sleep, and time of diversion. Every morning I walked out with my gun for two or three hours, if it did not rain; then employed myself to work till about eleven o'clock; then ate; and from twelve to two I lay down to sleep, the weather being excessive hot: and, in the evening, work again. The working part of this day and the next were employed in making a table.

*November 5.* — I went abroad with my gun and my dog, and killed a wildcat; her skin pretty soft, but her flesh good



for nothing. Coming back by the seashore, I saw many sorts of sea-fowls ; but was surprised, and almost frightened, with two or three seals, which, while I was gazing, not well knowing what they were, got into the sea and escaped.

*November 7.* — Now it began to be settled fair weather. The 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, and part of the 12th (for the 11th was Sunday according to my reckoning), I took wholly up to make me a chair, and with much ado brought it to a tolerable shape, but never to please me. Even in the making I pulled it to pieces several times.

*Note.* — I soon neglected keeping Sundays ; for, omitting my mark for them on my post, I forgot which day was which.

*November 17.* — I began to dig a cave behind my tent into the rock.

*Note.* — Three things I wanted exceedingly for this work ; a pick-axe, a shovel, and a wheelbarrow, or basket. For the pick-axe, I made use of the iron crows, which were proper enough, though heavy. The next thing was a shovel, or spade. This was so absolutely necessary, that I could do nothing effectually without it ; but what kind of one to make I knew not.

*November 18.* — In searching the woods, I found a tree which, in the Brazils, they call the iron tree, for its exceeding hardness. With great labor, and almost spoiling my axe, I cut a piece, and brought it home, and worked it by little and little into the form of a shovel or spade.

I still wanted a basket, or a wheelbarrow. A basket I could not make, having no twigs that would bend to make wicker-ware — at least, none yet found. As to the wheelbarrow, I fancied I could make all but the wheel. That I had no notion of. So I gave it over, and for carrying away the earth which I dug out of the cave, I made me a thing like a hod, which laborers carry mortar in. This was not so difficult as making the shovel ; and yet this and the shovel occupied no



less than four days, I mean always excepting my morning's walk with my gun, which I seldom failed to take, and very seldom failed also of bringing home something fit to eat.

*December 10.* — I began now to think my cave or vault finished, when on a sudden (it seems I had made it too large) a great quantity of earth fell down from the top and one side; so much that it frightened me, and not without reason, too. If I had been under it, I had never wanted a grave-digger. Upon this disaster I had a great deal of work to do over, for I had the loose earth to carry out; and I had the ceiling to prop up, so that I might be sure no more would come down.

*December 11.* — I went to work and got posts pitched upright, with two pieces of board across over each post; and in about a week I had the roof secured.

*December 20.* — Set up some pieces of board like a dresser, to place my victuals on. Also I made me another table.

*December 24.* — Much rain all night and all day.

*December 25.* — Rain all day.

*December 26.* — No rain, and the earth much cooler than before, and pleasanter.

*December 28, 29, 30, 31.* — Great heats and no breeze, so that there was no stirring abroad, except in the evening, for food. This time I spent in putting all my things in order within doors.

*January 1.* — Very hot: but I went abroad early and late with my gun, and lay still in the middle of the day. This evening, going farther into the valleys which lay toward the centre of the island, I found there was plenty of goats, though exceedingly shy, and hard to come at. I resolved to try if I could train my dog to hunt them down.

*January 2.* — I went out with my dog, and set him on the goats; but they all faced about upon him, and he would not go near them.

*January 3.* — I began my fence, or wall; which I resolved to make very thick and strong. I was from the 3d of January



to the 14th of April finishing and perfecting this wall, though it was no more than about twenty-four yards in length.

During this time I went to the woods for game nearly every day, and made frequent discoveries in these walks of something or other to my advantage ; particularly I found a kind of wild pigeons, which built in the holes of rocks ; and taking some young ones, I endeavored to breed them up tame ; but when they grew older they flew all away. However, I frequently found their nests, and got their young ones, which were very good meat.

In the managing my household affairs, I wanted many things, which I thought at first it was impossible for me to make ; and, indeed, as to some of them it was. For instance, I could never make a cask. I had a small runlet or two ; but I could never arrive to the capacity of making one, though I spent many weeks about it. I could neither put in the heads, nor join the staves so true to one another that they would hold water. I also was at a great loss for candles. So as soon as it was dark, which was generally by seven o'clock, I was obliged to go to bed. The only remedy I had was, that when I killed a goat I saved the tallow, and with a little dish made of clay, which I baked in the sun, to which I added a wick of oakum, I made me a lamp. This gave me light, though not a clear, steady light like a candle. In the middle of all my labors it happened that, rummaging my things, I found a little bag, which had been filled with corn for the feeding of poultry, as I suppose, when the ship came from Lisbon. What little remainder of corn had been in the bag was all devoured by the rats, and I saw nothing in the bag but husks and dust ; and being willing to have the bag for some other use, I shook the husks of corn out of it on one side of my fortification, under the rock.

It was a little before the great rains that I threw this stuff away, taking no notice, and soon forgetting that I had thrown anything there. About a month after, I saw a few stalks of



something green shooting out of the ground by the rock ; but I was perfectly astonished when, after a little longer time, I saw about ten or twelve ears come out, which were green barley, of the same kind as our English barley.

It is impossible to express the confusion of my thoughts when I saw barley grow there in a climate which I knew was not proper for it, and especially as I knew not how it came there. I began to suggest that God had miraculously caused this grain to grow without any help of seed sown, purely for my sustenance in that wild, miserable place. I blessed myself that such a prodigy of Nature should happen upon my account ; and this was the more strange to me, because I saw, along by the side of the rock, some other straggling stalks, which proved to be stalks of rice, and which I knew because I had seen it grow in Africa, when I was ashore there. I not only thought these the productions of Providence for my support, but not doubting that there was more in the place, I went all over that part of the island where I had been before, peering in every corner for more of it, but I could not find any. At last it occurred to my thoughts that I had shaken the bag of chickens' food out in that place ; and the wonder began to cease ; and, I must confess, my thankfulness to God's providence began to abate too.

I carefully saved the ears of barley, you may be sure, and, laying up every corn, I resolved to sow them all, hoping in time to have some quantity, sufficient to supply me with bread. But it was not till the fourth year that I would allow myself the least grain to eat, and even then I ate sparingly. I lost all that I sowed first, by not observing the proper time ; for I sowed just before the dry season, so that it never came up at all. Besides the barley, there were twenty or thirty stalks of rice, which I preserved with the same care.

*April 16.* — As I was busy, behind my tent, in the entrance to my cave, all on a sudden I found the earth came tumbling down from the roof of my cave, and from the edge of the hill



over my head, and two of the posts I had set up in the cave cracked in a frightful manner. I was heartily scared ; thinking that the top of my cave was fallen in, as some of it had done before ; and I ran forward to my ladder, and got over my wall for fear of the pieces of the hill, which I expected might roll down upon me. I was no sooner on the firm ground, than I plainly saw it was a terrible earthquake ; for the ground I stood on shook three times at about eight minutes' interval, with three such shocks as would have overturned the strongest building ; and a great piece of a rock, about half a mile from me, next the sea, fell down with such a terrible noise as I never had heard in all my life. I perceived also the sea was put into a violent motion ; and I believe the shocks were stronger under the water than on the island.

I was so amazed that I was like one dead or stupefied ; and the motion of the earth made my stomach sick like one that was tossed at sea ; but the noise of the falling of the rock awaked me, as it were, and I thought of nothing then but the hill falling upon my tent and my household goods, and burying all at once.

After the third shock was over, and I felt no more for some time, I began to take courage ; and yet I had not heart enough to get over my wall again, for fear of being buried alive, but still sat upon the ground, greatly cast down and disconsolate, not knowing what to do.

While I sat thus, I found the sky was overcast, as if it would rain. Soon after that, the wind arose by little and little, so that in less than half an hour it blew a most dreadful hurricane. The sea was white with foam and froth ; the shore was covered with the breach of the water ; the trees were torn up by the roots ; and a terrible storm it was. This held about three hours and then abated ; and in two hours more it was calm, and began to rain very hard.

All this while I sat upon the ground much terrified and



dejected ; but my spirits now began to revive ; and the rain also helping to persuade me, I went in my tent ; but the rain was so violent that my tent was ready to be beaten down with it ; and I was forced to go into my cave, though very much afraid and uneasy, for fear it should fall on my head. This violent rain forced me to cut a hole through my fortifications, to let the water go out, which would else have flooded my cave. It continued raining all that night, and great part of the next day, so that I could not stir abroad. I began to think of what I had best do ; concluding, that if the island was subject to these earthquakes, there would be no living in a cave, but I must build some little hut in an open place which I might surround with a wall, and so make myself secure.

*April 22.* — I began to consider means to put this resolve in execution ; but I was at a great loss about my tools. I had three large axes, and abundance of hatchets (for we carried the hatchets to traffic with the Indians) ; but with much chopping and cutting knotty hard wood, they were all full of notches, and dull ; and though I had a grindstone, I could not turn it and grind my tools too. This caused me as much thought as a statesman would have bestowed upon a grand point of politics. At length, I contrived a wheel with a string, to turn it with my foot, that I might have both my hands at liberty.

*April 28, 29.* — These two whole days I took up in grinding my tools, my contrivance for turning my grindstone performing very well.

*May 1.* — In the morning, looking toward the seaside, the tide being low, I saw something lying on the shore. When I came to it, I found a small barrel, and two or three pieces of the wreck of the ship, which had been driven on shore by the late hurricane ; and looking toward the wreck itself, I thought it seemed to lie higher out of the water than it used to do. I examined the barrel which was driven on shore, and soon found it was a barrel of gunpowder ; but it had taken water, and the



powder was caked as hard as a stone. However, I rolled it farther on shore for the present, and went on.

When I came to the ship, I found the forecastle, which lay before buried in sand, was heaved up at least six feet, and the stern, which had been broken to pieces and parted from the rest by the force of the sea soon after I had left rummaging, was cast on one side ; and whereas there was a great place of water before, so that I could not come within a quarter of a mile of the wreck without swimming, I could now walk quite up to her when the tide was out. I was surprised with this at first, but soon concluded it must have been done by the earthquake ; and as by this violence the ship was more broken open than formerly, many things came daily on shore, which the sea had loosened.

I busied myself mightily, that day, in searching whether I could make any way into the ship ; but I found all the inside was choked up with sand. However, I resolved to pull everything to pieces that I could of the ship, concluding that all I could get from her would be of some use or other to me.

*May 3.* — I began with my saw, and cut a beam through, which held some of the upper part together, and I cleared away the sand as well as I could from the side which lay highest ; but the tide coming in, I was obliged to give over for that time.

*May 5.* — Worked on the wreck ; cut another beam asunder, and brought three great planks off from the decks, which I tied together, and made float to shore when the tide of flood came on.

*May 6.* — Worked on the wreck. Got several iron bolts out of her, and other pieces of iron-work. Came home very much tired.

*May 7.* — Found the weight of the wreck had broken itself down, the beams being cut. The inside of the hold now lay so open that I could see into it ; but it was almost full of water and sand.

*May 8.* — Went to the wreck, and carried an iron crow to



wrench up the deck. I wrenched off two planks, and brought them on shore with the tide. I left the iron crow in the wreck for next day.

*May 9.* — With the crow made way into the body of the wreck, and felt several casks, and loosened them, but could not break them up. I felt also a roll of lead, and could stir it, but it was too heavy to remove.

*May 10, 11, 12, 13, 14.* — Went every day to the wreck; and got pieces of timber, and boards, and two or three hundred-weight of iron.

*May 15.* — I carried two hatchets, to try if I could cut a piece off the roll of lead, by placing the edge of one hatchet, and driving it with the other; but as the lead lay about a foot and a half in the water, I could not drive the hatchet.

*May 16.* — It had blown hard in the night, and the wreck appeared more broken by the force of the water; but I stayed so long in the woods, to get pigeons for food, that the tide prevented me going to the wreck that day.

*May 24.* — Every day, to this day, I worked on the wreck; and with hard labor I loosened some things so much with the crow that the tide floated out several casks, and two of the seamen's chests; but the wind blowing from the shore nothing came to land. I continued this work every day to the 15th of June, except the time necessary to get food, which I always appointed, during this part of my employment, to be when the tide was up, that I might be ready when it was ebb'd out. By this time I had gotten timber, and plank, and iron-work enough to have built a good boat, if I had known how; and also I got, at several times, and in several pieces, nearly one hundred-weight of the sheet lead.

*June 16.* — Going down to the seaside, I found a large turtle. This was the first I had seen.

*June 17.* — Cooked the turtle. I found in her three-score eggs; and her flesh was to me, at that time, the most savory



and pleasant that ever I tasted in my life, having had no flesh, but of goats and fowls, since I landed in this horrible place.

*June 18.* — Rained all the day, and I stayed within. I thought the rain felt cold, and I was somewhat chilly, which I knew was not usual in that latitude.

*June 19.* — Very ill, and shivering, as if the weather had been cold.

*June 20.* — No rest all night ; violent pains in my head, and feverish.

*June 21.* — Very ill ; frightened almost to death with the apprehensions of my sad condition — to be sick, and no help. Prayed to God, for the first time since the storm off Hull, but scarce knew what I said or why ; my thoughts being all confused.

*June 22.* — A little better.

*June 23.* — Very bad again ; cold and shivering, and then a violent headache.

*June 24.* — Much better.

*June 25.* — An ague very violent. The fit held me seven hours, with faint sweats after it.

*June 26.* — Better ; and having no victuals to eat, took my gun, but found myself very weak. However, I killed a goat, and with much difficulty got it home, and broiled some of it, and ate. I would fain have stewed it, and made some broth, but had no pot.

*June 27.* — The ague again so violent that I lay abed all day, and neither ate nor drank. I was ready to perish for thirst ; but had no strength to stand up, or to get myself any water to drink. Prayed to God again, but was light-headed ; and knew not what to say ; only I lay and cried, “ Lord, look upon me ! Lord, pity me ! Lord, have mercy upon me ! ”

I suppose I did nothing else for two or three hours ; till the fit wearing off, I fell asleep, and did not awake till far in the night. When I awoke, I found myself much refreshed, but



weak, and exceeding thirsty. However, as I had no water in my whole habitation, I was forced to lie till morning, and went to sleep again.

*June 28.* — Having been somewhat refreshed with the sleep I had had, and the fit being entirely off, I got up. I considered that the ague would return again the next day, and now was my time to get something to refresh and support myself when I should be ill; and the first thing I did, I filled a large square case-bottle<sup>o</sup> with water, and set it on my table, in reach of my bed. Then I got me a piece of the goat's flesh, and broiled it on the coals, but could eat little. I walked about, but was very weak, and withal sad and heavy-hearted under a sense of my miserable condition, dreading the return of my distemper the next day. At night, I made my supper of three of the turtle's eggs, which I roasted in the ashes.

After I had eaten, I sat down in my chair, and lighted my lamp, for it began to be dark. Now, as the apprehensions of the return of my distemper terrified me very much, it occurred to my thought, that the Brazilians take no physic but their tobacco for almost all distempers. I had a piece of a roll of tobacco in one of the chests, which was quite dry, and some also that was green.

I went, directed by Heaven, no doubt; for in this chest I found a cure both for soul and body. I opened the chest, and found the tobacco; and as the few books I had saved lay there too, I took out one of the Bibles, which to this time I had not found leisure, or so much as inclination, to look into, and brought both that and the tobacco with me to the table.

What use to make of the tobacco, as to my distemper, or whether it was good for it I knew not; but I tried several experiments, as I was resolved it should heal one way or other. I first took a piece of leaf, and chewed it in my mouth, which almost stupefied my brain, the tobacco being green and strong, and I not much used to it. Then I took



some and steeped it an hour or two in some rum, and resolved to take a dose of it when I lay down. Lastly, I burnt some on a pan of coals, and held my nose close over the smoke as long as I could bear it.

In the interval of this operation, I took up the Bible and began to read; but my head was too much disturbed with the tobacco to bear reading; only, having opened the book casually, the words that occurred to me were these, "Call upon me in the day of trouble, and I will deliver thee, and thou shalt glorify me."

It now grew late, and the tobacco had dozed my head so much that I inclined to sleep. So I left my lamp burning, lest I should want anything in the night, and went to bed. But before I lay down, I kneeled and prayed to God to fulfil the promise to me, that if I called upon him in the day of trouble, he would deliver me. After my broken and imperfect prayer was over, I drank the rum in which I had steeped the tobacco, and it was so strong and rank of the tobacco, that I could scarcely get it down. Immediately I went to bed, and fell into a sound sleep, and waked no more till, by the sun, it must have been near three o'clock in the afternoon the next day.

When I awaked I found myself exceedingly refreshed, and my spirits lively and cheerful. I was stronger than I had been the day before, and I was hungry. I had no fit, but continued much altered for the better. This was the 29th.

The 30th was my well day, of course, and I went abroad with my gun, but did not care to travel far. I killed a sea-fowl or two, and brought them home; but was not very forward to eat them. So I ate some more of the turtle's eggs, which were very good. This evening I renewed the medicine, which I had supposed did me good the day before, viz., the tobacco steeped in rum; only I did not take so much, nor did I chew any of the leaf, or hold my head over the smoke. However, I was not so well the next day, which was the 1st



of July, as I hoped I should be ; for I had a little spice of a cold fit, but it was not much.

*July 2.* — I renewed the medicine all three ways ; and dosed myself with it as at first, and doubled the quantity which I drank.

*July 3.* — I missed the fit for good and all, though I did not recover my full strength for some weeks after. While I was thus gathering strength, my thoughts ran exceedingly upon this Scripture, “I will deliver thee ;” and surely I had been delivered, and wonderfully too, from the most distressed condition that could be.

*July 4.* — I took the Bible ; and beginning at the New Testament, I began seriously to read it and imposed upon myself to read a while every morning and every night ; not tying myself to the number of chapters, but as long as my thoughts should engage me.

## CHAPTER VI

I recover from my ague — Of a journey I made into the island — I discover melons, limes, and abundance of grapes fit for raisins — Of my cats — I dig up a piece of ground and sow my grain — I travel to the other side of the island, and I bring home a young parrot and a kid I captured.

My condition began now to be, though not less miserable as to my way of living, yet much easier as to my mind : my thoughts being directed, by a constant reading the Scripture and praying to God, to things of a higher nature. Also, my health and strength returned, and I bestirred myself to furnish myself with everything that I wanted, and make my way of living as regular as I could.

From the 4th of July to the 14th, I was chiefly employed in



walking about with my gun in my hand, a little at a time ; for it is hardly to be imagined to what weakness I was reduced. Having now secured my habitation, fully to my mind, I had a great desire to make a more perfect discovery of the island, and to see what productions I might find, which yet I knew nothing of.

It was the 15th of July that I began to take a more particular survey of the island. I went up the creek first. After about two miles the tide did not flow any higher ; and the stream was no more than a little brook. On the banks of this brook I found many pleasant savannas or meadows, plain, smooth, and covered with grass ; and on the rising parts of them, where the water never overflowed, I found a great deal of tobacco, green, and growing to a very strong stalk. There were divers other plants, which I had no understanding about. I searched for the cassava root,<sup>o</sup> which the Indians in that climate make their bread of, but I could find none. I came back, musing what course I might take to know the virtue and goodness of the fruits or plants which I should discover ; but could arrive at no conclusion.

The next day, I went up the same way again ; and after going somewhat further the brook and savannas ceased, and the country became more woody than before. In this part I found melons on the ground, in great abundance ; and grapevines had spread over the trees, and the clusters of grapes were just now in their prime, very ripe and rich. This was a surprising discovery, and I was exceeding glad.

I spent all that evening there, and went not back to my habitation. This was the first night I had lain from home. I got up into a tree, where I slept well ; and the next morning proceeded upon my discovery, travelling nearly four miles, keeping still due north. At the end of this march I came to an opening, where the country seemed to descend to the west ; and a little spring of fresh water issued out of the side of the hill



by me, and the country appeared so green and flourishing, that it looked like a planted garden.

I descended a little on the side of that delicious valley, surveying it with pleasure, to think that this was all my own, and that I was king and lord of all this country. I saw here abundance of cocoa trees, orange and lemon and citron trees. I resolved to lay up a store of grapes, limes, and lemons, to furnish myself for the wet season, which I knew was approaching. In order to do this, I gathered a great heap of grapes in one place, a lesser heap in another place, and a great parcel of limes and lemons in a third place; and taking a few of each with me, I travelled homeward, and resolved to come again, and bring a bag to carry the rest home. Accordingly, having spent three days in this journey, I returned to my cave; but before I got thither, the grapes were spoiled. The richness of the fruit, and the weight of the juice, having broken them and bruised them so they were good for little or nothing.

The next day I went back, having made two small bags to bring home my harvest; but I was surprised, when coming to my heap of grapes, to find them trodden to pieces, and dragged about, some here, some there, and abundance devoured. I concluded some wild creatures had done this; but what they were I knew not. As there was no laying the grapes up in heaps, and no carrying them away in a sack, but that one way they would be destroyed, and the other way they would be crushed with their own weight, I took another course; for I gathered a large quantity and hung them on the outer branches of the trees, that they might dry in the sun. As for the limes and lemons, I carried as many back as I could well stand under.

When I came home from this journey, I contemplated with great pleasure the fruitfulness of that valley, the attractiveness of the situation, and the security from storm; and I began to think of removing my habitation, and to look out for a place in that pleasant, fruitful part of the island equally safe as where



now I was situate. This plan ran long in my head, but when I came to consider that I was now by the seaside, where it was at least possible that something might happen to my advantage; and the same ill fate that brought me hither might bring some other unhappy wretches to the same place; and to enclose myself among the hills and woods in the centre of the island, was to render such an affair impossible; therefore I ought not by any means to remove.

However, I was so enamoured with the place that I spent much of my time there for the whole remaining part of the month of July; and built me a little kind of a bower, and surrounded it with a strong double hedge, as high as I could reach, well staked, and filled between with brushwood. Here I lay very secure, sometimes two or three nights together, always going over the hedge with a ladder. I fancied now I had my country house and my seacoast house. This work took me to the beginning of August.

The 3d of August, I found the grapes I had hung up were perfectly dried, and indeed were excellent raisins, and I began to take them down from the trees. It was very happy that I did so, for no sooner had I carried them home to my cave, but it began to rain. It rained, more or less, every day till the middle of October, and sometimes so violently and continuously that I could not stir out of my cave for several days.

I had been concerned for the loss of one of my cats, which ran away from me, and I heard no tidings of her, till, to my astonishment, she came home about the end of August, with three kittens. I afterwards came to be so pestered with cats that I was forced to kill them like vermin or wild beasts, and to drive them from my house as much as possible.

From the 14th of August to the 26th, incessant rain, so that I could do little, and was now very careful not to be much wet. In this confinement, I began to be straitened for food; but venturing out twice, I one day killed a goat; and the other



day, found a very large tortoise, which was a treat to me, and my food was regulated thus: I ate a bunch of raisins for my breakfast, a piece of the goat's flesh, or of the turtle, for my dinner, broiled, and two or three of the turtle's eggs for supper.

*September 30.* — I was now come to the anniversary of my landing. I kept this day as a solemn fast, setting it apart for religious exercise; and having not tasted the least refreshment for twelve hours, even till the going down of the sun, I then ate a biscuit and a bunch of grapes, and went to bed.

I had for many months observed no Sabbath-day; for as at first I had no sense of religion upon my mind, I had, after some time, omitted making on my post a longer notch than ordinary for the Sabbath-day, and so did not really know what any of the days were; but now I divided them into weeks, and in future determined to set apart every seventh day for a Sabbath.

A little after this my ink began to fail me, and so I contented myself to use it more sparingly, and to write down only the most remarkable events of my life, without continuing a daily memorandum.

I have mentioned that I had saved the few ears of barley and rice which I had so surprisingly found; and now I thought it a proper time to sow the seed, after the rains, the sun being in its southern position, going from me. Accordingly, I dug up a piece of ground as well as I could with my wooden spade, and dividing it into two parts, I sowed my grain; but as I was sowing, it occurred to my thoughts that I would not sow it all at first, because I did not know when was the proper time. So I sowed two-thirds, leaving about a handful of each. It was a great comfort to me afterward that I did so, as not one grain of that I sowed came to anything; for the dry months following, the earth had no rain. Finding my first seed did not grow, which I easily imagined was by reason of the drought, I sought for a moister piece of ground to make another trial, and I dug up a piece near my new bower, and



sowed the rest of my seed in February. This having the rainy months of March and April to water it, sprang up very pleasantly, and yielded a good crop ; but having had only part of the seed left, and not daring to sow all that, my whole crop did not amount to more than half a peck of each kind. But by this experiment I was made master of my business, and knew exactly when the proper season was to sow, and that I might expect two seed-times and two harvests every year.

While this corn was growing I made a little discovery, which was of use to me afterward. As soon as the rains were over, and the weather began to settle, which was about the month of November, I made a visit up the country to my bower, where, though I had not been for some months I found all things just as I left them. The circle of double hedge that I had made was not only firm and entire, but the stakes which I had cut off some trees that grew thereabouts were all shot out and grown with long branches, as much as a willow-tree usually shoots the first year after lopping its head. I was very well pleased to see the young trees grow ; and in three years, though the hedge made a circle of about twenty-five yards in diameter, yet the trees, for such I might now call them, covered it, and were a complete shade, sufficient to lodge under all the dry season.

This made me resolve to cut some more stakes and make a hedge like this, in a semicircle round the wall of my first dwelling, which I did ; and placing the stakes in a double row, at about eight yards' distance from my first fence, they grew presently, and were a fine cover to my habitation. After I had found, by experience, the ill consequence of being abroad in the rain, I took care to furnish myself with provisions beforehand, that I might not be obliged to go out, and I sat within doors as much as possible during the wet months. In this time I found plenty of employment, and particularly, I tried many ways to make myself a basket, but all the twigs I could get for the purpose



were too brittle. When I was a boy, I took great delight in standing at a basketmaker's, in the town where my father lived, to see the workmen make their wickerware ; and being, as boys usually are, very officious to help, and a great observer of the manner how they did those things, and sometimes lending a hand, I had by this means so full knowledge of the methods, that I wanted nothing but the materials. It came into my mind that the twigs of that tree whence I cut my stakes that grew might possibly be as tough as the osiers in England, and I resolved to try them.

Accordingly, I went to my country house, and cutting some of the smaller twigs, I found them to my purpose as much as I could desire ; whereupon I went the next time with a hatchet and cut down a quantity. These I set up to dry, within my circle or hedges, and when they were fit for use, I carried them to my cave ; and during the next season, I employed myself in making, as well as I could, a great many baskets, both to carry and to lay up things in, as I had occasion ; and though I did not finish them very handsomely, yet I made them so they were serviceable for my purpose. Afterward, I took care never to be without them ; and as my wickerware decayed, I made more. Having mastered this difficulty, and employed a world of time about it, I bestirred myself to see, if possible, how to supply another want. I had no vessel to hold anything that was liquid, except two runlets, which were almost full of rum, and some glass bottles. I had not a pot to boil anything in, except a great kettle which I saved out of the ship, and which was too big to make broth, or stew a bit of meat. I employed myself in planting my second row of stakes or piles and in this wicker work, all the summer or dry season, when another business took up more time than it would be imagined I could spare.

I mentioned before that I had a great mind to see the whole island, and that I had travelled up the brook, and on to where



I built my bower. I now resolved to travel quite to the sea-shore on that side ; so, taking my gun, a hatchet, and my dog, and a larger quantity of powder and shot than usual, with two biscuit-cakes and a great bunch of raisins in my pouch, I began my journey. When I had passed the vale where my bower stood, I came within view of the sea to the west, and it being a very clear day, fairly descried land. It lay very high, extending from the west to the southwest at a great distance. By my guess, it could not be less than fifteen leagues off.

I could not tell what part of the world this might be, otherwise than that I knew it must be part of America, and perhaps inhabited by savages, where, if I had landed, I had been in a worse condition than I was now. I found that side of the island much pleasanter than mine, with intervals of very fine woods, and open fields, adorned with flowers and grass. I saw abundance of parrots, and after some painstaking I knocked one down with a stick, and brought it home, and taught it to call me by my name very familiarly.

I was exceedingly diverted with this journey. I found in the low ground hares, as I thought them to be ; but they differed greatly from all other kinds I had met with, nor could I satisfy myself to eat them, though I killed several. I had no need to be venturous, for I had plenty of food, and that which was very good, too, especially these three sorts, — goats, pigeons, and turtle.

I never travelled in this journey more than two miles outright in a day ; but I took so many turns and returns to see what discoveries I could make, that I came weary enough to the places where I resolved to stay for all night ; and then I either reposed in a tree, or surrounded myself with a row of stakes set upright in the ground, so no wild creature could come at me without waking me.

As soon as I reached the sea I was surprised to discover that the shore was covered with innumerable turtles, whereas on my



side of the island I found but three in a year and a half. Here was also an infinite number of fowls of many kinds, some of which I had not seen before, and many of them very good meat. I could have shot all I pleased, but was very sparing of my powder.

I travelled along the shore of the sea toward the east, I suppose about twelve miles, and then setting up a tall pole for a mark, I concluded I would go home, and that my next journey should be on the other side of the island east from my dwelling, and so round till I came to my post.

I took another way to go back than that I came, thinking I could easily keep all the island so much in my view that I could not miss finding my first dwelling ; but after walking about two or three miles, I descended into a very large valley so surrounded with hills, and those hills covered with wood, that I could not see which was my way by any means except the sun. It happened, to my misfortune, that the sky was darkly clouded for three or four days while I was in this valley, and not being able to see the sun, I wandered about very uncomfortable, and at last was obliged to seek out the seaside. Then I returned the same way I came by easy journeys, the weather being exceeding hot, and my gun, ammunition, hatchet, and other things, very heavy.

In this journey my dog surprised a young kid, and seized upon it ; and I running in took hold of it, and saved it alive from the dog. I made a collar for this little creature, and with a string of rope-yarn, which I always carried about with me, I led it along, though with some difficulty, till I came to my bower, and there I enclosed it and left it, for I was very impatient to be at home, whence I had been absent more than a month.



## CHAPTER VII

I return from my wandering journey — Of how I made me a board for a long shelf — I harvest my first crop of barley and rice — My troubles in making pots and jars — I build a boat, but am not able to launch it — I make some clothes and a great umbrella out of the skins of animals.

I CANNOT express what a satisfaction it was to me to come into my old hutch, and lie down in my hammock-bed. I reposed here a week, to rest and regale myself after my long journey ; and during this week, most of the time was taken up in the weighty affair of making a cage for my Poll, who began now to be mightily well acquainted with me. Then I began to think of the poor kid and resolved to go and fetch it home. I found it where I left it, but almost starved for want of food. Having fed it, I tied it as I did before, to lead it away ; but it was so tame with being hungry, that I had no need to have tied it, for it followed me like a dog ; and as I continually fed it, the creature became so loving, so gentle, and so fond, that it was from that time one of my domestics, and would never leave me afterward.

The rainy season of the autumnal equinox was now come, and I kept the 30th of September in the same solemn manner as before, being the anniversary of my landing on the island. I had now been there two years, and saw no more prospect of being delivered than the first day I came.

Thus I began my third year. I was very seldom idle, having regularly divided my time according to several daily employments, such as, first, my duty to God, and the reading the Scriptures ; secondly, the going abroad with my gun for food, which generally took three hours every morning, when it did not rain ; thirdly, the dressing, curing, preserving, and cooking what I had killed or caught for my supply. Also, it is to be considered, that in



the middle of the day the violence of the heat was too great to stir out ; so that about four hours in the evening was all the time I could be supposed to work in, with this exception, that sometimes I changed my hours of hunting and working, and went to work in the morning, and abroad with my gun in the afternoon.

For want of tools, want of help, and want of skill, everything I did took up much time : for example, I was full two-and-forty days in making a board for a long shelf, which I wanted in my cave ; whereas two sawyers, with their tools and a saw-pit, would have cut six such boards out of the same tree in half a day. My case was this : it was a large tree, because my board was to be a broad one. This tree I was three days cutting down, and two more cutting off the boughs. With inexpressible hacking and hewing, I reduced both the sides of it into chips till it began to be light enough to move. Then I turned it, and made one side of it smooth and flat from end to end. Then turning that side downward, I cut the other side till I brought the board to be about two inches thick, and smooth on both sides. Any one may judge the labor of my hands in such a piece of work ; but labor and patience carried me through that, and many other things.

I was now, in the months of November and December, expecting my crop of barley and rice. The ground I had planted was not great ; for my seed of each was not more than the quantity of half a peck. But now my crop promised very well, when on a sudden I found I was in danger of losing it all by enemies of several sorts, which there seemed little chance to keep from it. I had before been troubled with the goats, and wild creatures I called hares, which, tasting the sweetness of the blade, lay in the field night and day, as soon as the grain came up, and ate it so close that it could get no time to shoot up into stalk.

This I saw no remedy for, but by enclosing it with a hedge, which I did with a great deal of toil. However, as my arable



land was but small, suited to my crop, I got it well fenced in about three weeks ; and shooting some of the creatures in the daytime, I set my dog to guard the field in the night, tying him to a stake at the gate, where he would stand and bark all night long. So in a little while the enemies forsook the place, and the corn grew very strong and well, and began to ripen.

But as the beasts ruined me before, while my corn was in the blade, so the birds were as likely to ruin me now, when it was in the ear ; for going to see how it throve, I saw my little crop surrounded with fowls, of I know not how many sorts. I immediately let fly among them, for I always had my gun with me. I had no sooner shot, but there rose up a cloud of fowls, which I had not seen at all, from among the corn itself.

This touched me deeply, for I foresaw that in a few days they would devour all my hopes, and I should never be able to raise a crop at all. What to do I could not tell. However, I resolved not to lose my corn, though I should watch it night and day. I went into it to see what damage was already done, and found the birds had spoiled a good deal of it ; but as it was yet too green for them, the loss was not so great, but the remainder was likely to be a good crop, if it could be saved.

I stayed to load my gun, and then coming away, I could see the thieves sitting upon all the trees about me, as if they only waited till I was gone, and the event proved it to be so ; for as I walked off, I was no sooner out of their sight, but they dropped down one by one into the corn again. I was so provoked that I could not have patience to stay till more came, knowing that every grain that they ate now was a loss of what would increase to be a peck-loaf to me. Going up to the hedge, I fired, and killed three of them. This was what I wished for ; so I took them up, and served them as we serve notorious thieves in England, that is, hanged them for a terror to others. It is impossible to imagine that this should have such an effect as it had, for the fowls not only would not come



at the corn, but they forsook all that part of the island, and I never saw a bird near the place as long as my scarecrows hung there. This I was very glad of, you may be sure, and about the latter end of December, which was our second harvest of the year, I reaped my corn.

I had no scythe or sickle to cut it down, and all I could do was to make one, as well as I could, of one of my swords, which I saved among the arms out of the ship. I cut nothing off but the ears, and I carried them away in a great basket which I had made, and rubbed the grain out with my hands. At the end of all my harvesting, I found that out of my half-peck of seed I had nearly two bushels of rice, and more than two bushels and a half of barley ; that is to say, by my guess, for I had no measure.

This was a great encouragement to me, and I foresaw that in time it would please God to supply me with bread. It is a little wonderful the multitude of things necessary in providing this one article, as I, that was reduced to a mere state of nature, found out to my daily discouragement. I had no plough to turn up the earth ; but I made a wooden spade, though this did my work in a wooden manner. When the corn was sown, I had no harrow, but was forced to go over the ground myself, and drag a great heavy bough of a tree to scratch it. When the corn was growing, or grown, how many things I wanted to fence it, reap it, cure and carry it home, thrash, part it from the chaff, and save it ! Then I wanted a mill to grind it, sieves to dress it, yeast and salt to make it into bread, and an oven to bake it in. As I had resolved to use none of the corn for bread till I had a greater quantity by me, I had the next six months to apply myself, by labor and invention, to furnish myself with utensils proper for the performing all the operations necessary.

But first I was to prepare more land, for I had now seed enough to sow fully an acre of ground. I sowed my seed in two



large, flat pieces of ground as near my house as I could find them to my mind, and fenced them in with a good hedge, the stakes of which were all of that wood I had set before, which I knew would grow ; so that I should have a living hedge, that would want but little repair. This work took three months, because a great part of that time was of the wet season, when I could not go abroad.

Within-doors, when it rained, all the while I was at work, I diverted myself with talking to my parrot ; and I quickly taught him to know his own name, and at last to speak it out pretty loud, " Poll," which was the first word I heard spoken in the island by any mouth but my own. I had long studied means to make myself some earthen vessels, which, indeed, I wanted sorely. Considering the heat of the climate, I did not doubt but if I could find any clay, I might botch up a pot as might, being dried by the sun, be hard enough and strong enough to bear handling, and I resolved to make some as large as I could, fit to stand like jars, to hold what should be put into them.

It would make the reader pity me, or rather laugh at me, to tell how many awkward ways I took to prepare the clay ; what odd, misshapen, ugly things I made ; how many of them fell in, and how many fell out — the clay not being stiff enough to bear its own weight ; how many cracked by the over-violent heat of the sun, being set out too hastily ; and how many fell to pieces with only moving, as well before as after they were dried. Having labored hard to find the clay — to dig it, to temper it, to bring it home, and work it — I could not make more than two large earthen ugly things in a month's labor.

However, as the sun baked these two very dry and hard, I lifted them gently up and set them down in two great wicker baskets, which I had made on purpose for them, that they might not break ; and as between the pot and the basket there was a little room to spare, I stuffed it full of the rice and barley



straw ; and these two pots being to stand always dry, I thought would hold my corn, and perhaps the meal, when the corn was bruised.

Though I miscarried so much in my design for large pots, yet I made several smaller things with better success ; such as little round pots, flat dishes, pitchers, and pipkins, and the heat of the sun baked them strangely hard.

But all this would not answer my end, which was to get an earthen pot to hold what was liquid, and bear the fire. It happened after some time, making a pretty large fire for cooking my meat, when I went to put it out after I had done with it, I found a broken piece of one of my earthenware vessels in the fire, burnt as hard as a stone, and red as a tile. I was agreeably surprised, and said to myself that certainly they might be made to burn whole, if they would burn broken.

This set me to study how to order my fire so as to make it burn me some pots. I had no notion of a kiln, such as the potters burn in ; but I arranged three large pipkins, and two or three pots in a pile, one upon another, and placed my firewood all round, with a great heap of embers under them. I plied the fire with fresh fuel round the outside, and on the top, till I saw the pots in the inside red-hot quite through. I let them stand in that heat about five or six hours, till the sand which was mixed with the clay melted by the violence of the heat. Then I slacked my fire gradually till the pots began to abate of the red color, and watching them all night, that I might not let the fire abate too fast, in the morning I had three very good pipkins, and two other earthen pots, as hard burnt as could be desired, and one of them perfectly glazed with the running of the sand.

After this experiment I wanted no sort of earthenware for my use ; but I must needs say as to the shapes they were very indifferent, as any one may suppose, when I had no way of making them but as the children make dirt pies.

No joy at a thing of so mean a nature was ever equal to



mine, when I found I had made an earthen pot that would bear the fire. I had hardly patience to stay till they were cold before I set one on the fire with some water in it, to boil me some meat, which it did admirably well; and with a piece of a kid I made some very good broth.

My next concern was to get me a stone mortar to stamp corn in. To supply this want I was at a great loss. I spent many a day searching for a great stone to cut hollow and make fit for a mortar, but could find none, except what was in the solid rock, and which I had no way to dig or cut out; nor indeed were the rocks in the island of hardness sufficient, but were all of a sandy, crumbling stone, which would neither bear the weight of a heavy pestle, nor would break the corn without filling it with sand. So, after a great deal of time lost in searching for a stone, I resolved to use a great block of hard wood; and getting one as big as I had strength to stir, I rounded it and formed the outside with my axe and hatchet, and then, with the help of fire, made a hollow place in it. After this, I made a great heavy pestle of the wood called the iron-wood; and this I laid by till I had my next crop of corn, when I proposed to pound some of it into meal, to make bread.

My next difficulty was to make a sieve to dress my meal and part it from the bran and the husk. This was most difficult, for I had nothing to make it with; I mean thin fine canvas to sift the meal through. Linen I had none left but what was mere rags. I had goats' hair, but neither knew I how to weave nor spin it. At last I did remember I had, among the seamen's clothes which were saved out of the ship, some neckcloths of calico or muslin; and with pieces of these I made three small sieves, proper enough for the work.

The baking part was the next thing to be considered. I had no yeast, and as to that, there was no supplying the want, so I did not concern myself much about it. For an oven I made some earthen vessels about two feet broad and nine inches deep.



These I burned in the fire and laid them by ; and when I wanted to bake, I made a great fire on the hearth, which I had paved with square tiles, of my own making and burning also. When the firewood was burned pretty much into embers, I drew the coals forward on the hearth, so as to cover it all over, and there I let them lie till the hearth was very hot ; then sweeping away all the embers, I set down my loaves, and wheeling down the earthen pot upon them, drew the embers all round the outside of the pot, to keep in and add to the heat. Thus I baked my barley-loaves, and became, in a little time, a good pastry-cook into the bargain ; for I made myself various cakes and puddings of the rice.

It need not be wondered at if all these things took up most part of the third year of my abode here ; for it is to be observed that, in the interval of these things, I had my new harvest and husbandry to manage. I reaped my corn in its season, and carried it home as well as I could, and laid it up in the ear, in my large baskets, till I had time to rub it out, for I had no floor to thrash it on, or instrument to thrash it with.

I had of the barley about twenty bushels, and of the rice as much, or more ; so that I resolved to begin to use it freely. Also I resolved to see what quantity would be sufficient for me a whole year, and to sow but once a year, and I found that the forty bushels of barley and rice were much more than I could consume in a year, and that I needed to sow no greater quantity every year than I had sowed the last.

All the while these things were doing, my thoughts ran many times upon the prospect of land which I had seen from the other side of the island ; and I was not without wishes that I was on shore there, fancying I might find some way or other to convey myself farther. I made no allowance for the dangers, and how I might fall into the hands of savages, perhaps such as I would have reason to think far worse than the lions and tigers of Africa.



Now I wished for my boy Xury, and the long-boat with the shoulder-of-mutton sail, in which I had sailed more than a thousand miles on the coast of Africa : but this was in vain. Then I thought I would go and look at our ship's boat, which, as I have said, was blown upon the shore in the storm, when we were cast away. She lay almost where she did at first, and was turned by the force of the waves and the winds, bottom upward, against a high ridge of rough sand. If I could have refitted her, and launched her into the water, the boat would have done well enough, and I could have gone back to the Brazils with her ; but I might have easily foreseen that I could no more turn her and set her upright on her bottom than I could remove the island. However, I went to the wood, and cut levers and rollers, and brought them to the boat, suggesting to myself that if I could turn her down, I might easily repair the damage she had received, and she would be a very good boat, and I might go to sea in her.

I spared no pains in this piece of fruitless toil, and spent three or four weeks about it. At last, finding it impossible to heave the boat up with my little strength, I began to dig away the sand, to undermine it, and so to make it fall down, setting pieces of wood to guide it right in the fall. But when I had it turned down I was unable to stir it again, or to get under it, much less to move it forward toward the water ; and yet, though I gave over the hopes of the boat, my desire to venture over to the mainland increased rather than decreased.

This at length set me thinking whether it was possible to make myself a canoe, or periagua, such as the natives of those climates make, of the trunk of a great tree. I pleased myself extremely with my thoughts of making it, and with my having more conveniences for it than the Negroes or Indians ; but not at all considering the want of help to move it into the water.

I went to work upon this boat the most like a fool that ever



man did, who had any of his senses awake ; not but that the difficulty of launching my boat came often into my head ; but I put a stop to my inquiries into it, by this foolish answer which I gave myself : “ Let me first make it ; I warrant I shall find some way or other to get it along when it is done.”

This was a most preposterous method ; but the eagerness of my fancy prevailed, and to work I went, and felled a cedar tree, five feet ten inches diameter at the lower part next the stump, and four feet eleven inches diameter at the end of twenty-two feet ; after which it presently parted into branches. It was not without infinite labor that I felled this tree. I was twenty days hacking and hewing at the bottom ; I was fourteen more getting the vast spreading head of it cut off. After this, it cost me a month to shape it and dub it to something like the bottom of a boat, that it might swim upright as it ought to do. It cost me nearly three months more to clear the inside. This I did with mallet and chisel till I had brought it to be a very handsome periagua, and big enough to carry six-and-twenty men, and consequently big enough to carry me and all my cargo.

When I had gone through this work, I was extremely delighted with it. The boat was really much bigger than ever I saw a canoe, that was made of one tree, in my life. Many a weary stroke it had cost, you may be sure. Now there remained nothing but to launch it ; and had I gotten it into the water, I make no question but I should have begun the maddest voyage, and the most unlikely to be performed, that ever was undertaken.

But all my devices to get it to the water failed. It lay about one hundred yards from the creek ; but a little hill intervened. To take away this discouragement, I resolved to dig and make a declivity ; but when that was done I could no more stir the canoe than I could the other boat. Then I measured the distance, and resolved to cut a canal, to bring



the water up to the canoe, seeing I could not bring the canoe down to the water. I began this canal; but when I calculated how deep it was to be dug, how broad, how the stuff was to be thrown out, I found it would be ten or twelve years before I could go through with it; for the shore lay so high that at the upper end the canal must be at least twenty feet deep. So at length, though with great reluctance, I gave this attempt over also.

In the middle of this work I finished my fourth year, and kept my anniversary with devotion, and with comfort; for, by a constant study of the Word of God, I had gained a different knowledge from what I had before. I was removed from all the wickedness of the world here. I had nothing to covet, for I had all I was now capable of enjoying; I was lord of the whole manor; or, if I pleased, I might call myself king or emperor over the whole country which I had possession of. There were no rivals; I had none to dispute sovereignty with me. I had enough to eat and to supply my wants, and what was all the rest to me? If I killed more flesh than I could eat, the dog must eat it, or the vermin; if I sowed more corn than I could eat, it must be spoiled; the trees that I cut down were lying to rot on the ground; I could make no use of them except for fuel. The most covetous, griping miser in the world would have been cured of the vice of covetousness, if he had been in my place; for I possessed infinitely more than I knew what to do with. I had, as I hinted before, a parcel of money. Alas! there the sorry, useless stuff lay! I had no manner of business for it; and I often thought I would have given it all for sixpenny-worth of turnip and carrot seed, or for a handful of peas and beans and a bottle of ink. As it was, I had not the least benefit from it; but there it lay in a drawer, and grew mouldy with the damp of the cave, and if I had had the drawer full of diamonds, it had been the same, they had been of no value to me, because of no use.



I had now brought my state of life to be much easier than it was at first, and much easier to my mind, as well as to my body. I frequently sat down to meat with thankfulness, and admired the hand of God's providence, which had thus spread my table in the wilderness. I learned to look more upon the bright side of my condition, and less upon the dark side, and to consider what I enjoyed rather than what I wanted; and this gave me sometimes such secret comforts that I cannot express them. All our discontents appeared to me to spring from the want of thankfulness for what we have.

Another reflection of great use to me was to compare my present condition with what I expected it would be. I spent whole hours in representing to myself, how I must have acted if I had got nothing out of the ship; how I should have lived like a mere savage; that if I had killed a goat or a fowl, by any contrivance, I had no way to part the flesh from the skin or to cut it up; but must gnaw it with my teeth, and pull it with my claws, like a beast.

I had now been here so long that many things which I brought on shore for my help were either quite gone, or very much wasted and nearly spent. My ink had been gone some time, all but a very little, which I eked out with water, till it was so pale it scarce left any appearance of black upon the paper.

The biscuit which I brought out of the ship I had husbanded to the last degree, allowing myself but one cake of bread a day; and yet I was quite without bread for a year before I got any corn to use. My clothes too began to decay mightily. As to linen, I had had none a good while, except some checkered shirts which I found in the chests of the seamen, and which I carefully preserved. There were also several thick watch-coats<sup>o</sup> of the seamen's, but they were too hot to wear.

I began to consider putting the few rags I had, which I called



clothes, into some order. I had worn out all the waistcoats, and my business was now to try if I could make jackets out of the great watch-coats and with such other materials as I had. So I set to work, tailoring, or rather, indeed, botching, and I made two or three waistcoats.

I saved the skins of all the creatures that I killed, I mean four-footed ones, and I had them hung up stretched out with sticks in the sun, by which means some of them were so dry and hard that they were fit for little, but others were very useful. The first thing I made of these was a cap for my head, with the hair on the outside, to shoot off the rain; and I made me a suit of clothes wholly of those skins—that is to say, a waistcoat, and breeches open at the knees, and both loose, for they were rather to keep me cool than to keep me warm. I must not omit to acknowledge that they were wretchedly made; for if I was a bad carpenter, I was a worse tailor. However, they were such as I did very well with, and when I was abroad, if it happened to rain, the hair of the waistcoat and cap being outermost, I was kept dry.

I spent a great deal of time and pains to make an umbrella. I spoiled two or three before I contrived one to my mind. The main difficulty was to make it let down. I could make it spread, but if it did not let down too, it would not be portable for me any way except over my head. However, at last I made one to answer. I covered it with skins, the hair upward, so that it cast off the rain like a roof and kept off the sun so effectually that I could walk out in the hottest of the weather, and when I had no need of it I could close it, and carry it under my arm.



## CHAPTER VIII

I hew out a second boat, get it into the water, and begin a voyage around the island — A swift current carries me a great distance to sea — With difficulty I get back, and being landed on the north side of the island I return home on foot — I capture some young goats and fence them a pasturage — Of my dress and appearance — I am surprised with the print of a man's naked foot on the shore — I strengthen my defences.

I CANNOT say that, after this, for five years, any extraordinary thing happened to me, but I lived on in the same course, and place, as before. The chief things I was employed in were my yearly labor with my barley and rice, and curing my raisins — of all which I kept up just enough to have one year's provision beforehand. Besides this, and my daily labor of going out with my gun, I made a canoe, and by digging a canal to it six feet wide and four feet deep, I brought it into the creek, almost half a mile. I could not find a tree proper for it in a place where I could get the water to it at any less distance ; and though I was nearly two years about it, yet I never grudged my labor, in hopes of having a boat to go off to sea at last.

My little periagua was finished, yet the size of it was not at all answerable to the design which I had in view when I made the first ; I mean of venturing over to the mainland which was more than forty miles away. But, as I had a boat, my next design was to make a tour round the island. For this purpose I fitted up a little mast in my boat, and made a sail out of some of the pieces of the ship's sails which lay in store, and of which I had a great stock.

Having fitted my mast and sail, and tried the boat, I found she went very well. Then I made lockers at each end to put provisions, ammunition, etc., into, to be kept dry, either from rain or the spray of the sea ; and a little, long, hollow place



I cut in the inside of the boat, where I could lay my gun, making a flap to hang down over it, to keep it dry.

I fixed my umbrella in the stern, like a mast, to stand over my head, and keep the heat of the sun off me, like an awning; and thus I every now and then took a little voyage upon the sea; but never went far out, nor far from the creek. At last, being eager to view the circumference of my little kingdom, I victualled my ship for a voyage, putting in two dozen of my loaves of barley-bread, an earthen pot full of parched rice (a food I ate a great deal of), half a goat, and powder with shot for killing more, and two large watch-coats, of those which I had saved out of the seamen's chests. These I took, one to lie upon and the other to cover me in the night.

It was the 6th of November, in the sixth year of my reign, or my captivity, which you please, that I set out on this voyage, and I found it much longer than I expected; for though the island itself was not very large, yet when I came to the east side of it, I found a great ledge of rocks reaching out about two leagues into the sea, some above water, some under it; and beyond that a shoal of sand, lying dry half a league more.

When I discovered the ledge of rocks, I came to anchor; for I had made a kind of an anchor with a piece of a broken grappling which I got out of the ship. Having secured my boat, I took my gun and went on shore, and climbing a hill, which seemed to overlook the rocks, I saw the full extent of them.

In viewing the sea from that hill, I perceived a most furious current, which ran to the east, and came close to the point. I took the more notice of it, because I saw there would be some danger that when I came into it, I might be carried out to sea by the strength of it, and not be able to reach the island again. There was the same current on the other side of the island, only it set off at a farther distance, and made a strong eddy near the shore. So I would have nothing to do but to get out of the first current, and I should presently be in an eddy.



I lay here two days, because the wind blowing pretty fresh just contrary to the current made a great breach of the sea, on the point. Hence, it was not safe for me to keep close to the shore for the breach, nor to go far off, because of the stream.

The third day, in the morning, the wind having abated overnight, I ventured. But no sooner was I come to the point, though I was not my boat's length from the shore, than I found myself in a great depth of water, and in a current like the sluice of a mill. This current carried my boat along with such violence that I could not keep her so much as on the edge of it; but I found it hurried me farther and farther out from the eddy, which was on my left hand. There was no wind stirring to help me, and all that I could do with my paddles signified nothing. Now I began to give myself over for lost; for, as the current was on both sides of the island, I knew in a few leagues' distance they must join, and then I was irrecoverably gone; with no prospect before me except of perishing, not by the sea, for that was calm enough, but by starving. I had, indeed, found a tortoise on the shore, as big almost as I could lift, and had gotten it into the boat; and I had a great jar of fresh water; but what was all this to being driven into the vast ocean, where there was no shore, no mainland or island, for a thousand leagues at least?

Now I looked back upon my desolate, solitary island as the most pleasant place in the world, and all the happiness my heart could wish for was to be there again. I stretched out my hands to it, with eager desire. "Oh happy desert!" said I, "I shall never see thee more. Oh miserable creature! whither am I going?"

It is scarcely possible to imagine the consternation I was in, being driven from my beloved island, and in despair of ever regaining it. However, I worked hard and kept my boat as much toward the eddy as I possibly could. About noon, I thought I felt a breeze in my face, springing up from the south-



east. This cheered my heart a little, and especially when, in about half an hour more, it blew a gentle gale. By this time I was at a frightful distance from the island; and had the least cloudy or hazy weather intervened, I had been undone; for I had no compass on board, and should never have known how to have steered toward the island, if I had lost sight of it. But the weather continuing clear, I applied myself to hoist my mast and spread my sail, and then I stood away to the north, to get out of the current.

Just as I had set my mast and sail, and the boat began to stretch away, I saw by the clearness of the water some alteration of the current was near; for where the current was so strong the water was foul; but perceiving the water clear, I found the current abated; and presently I discerned to the east, at about half a mile, a breach of the sea upon some rocks. These rocks caused the current to part, and the main stress of it ran away more southerly. The other made a strong eddy, which ran back to the northwest, with a very sharp stream.

They who know what it is to be rescued from thieves just going to murder them, or who have been in like extremities, may guess what my joy was, and how gladly I put my boat into the stream of the eddy; and the wind also freshening, how gladly I spread my sail to it. This eddy carried me back, directly toward the island, but about two leagues more to the northward than the current lay which carried me away; so that when I came near the island, I found myself off the northern shore of it, that is to say, the end opposite to that which I went out from.

When I had made something more than a league of way by help of this current, I found it was spent, and served me no farther. However, being between two great currents, and having still a breeze of wind fair for me, I kept on steering directly for the island, though not making such fresh way as I did before, and about four o'clock in the evening got to land.



I brought my boat close to the shore, in a little cove that I spied under some trees, and laid me down to sleep, being quite spent with the labor and fatigue of the voyage.

I was now at a great loss how to get home with my boat! I had run too much hazard to think of attempting it by the way I went out; and what might be at the other side of the island I knew not, nor had I any mind to run more ventures. So I resolved on the next morning to make my way westward along the shore, to see if there was a creek where I might lay up my frigate in safety so as to have her again, if I wanted her. In about three miles, coasting the shore, I came to a very good inlet, which narrowed to a little brook, where I found a convenient harbor for my boat. She lay as if she had been in a dock made on purpose for her. Here having stowed my boat safe, I went on shore to look about me, and see where I was.

I soon found I had but a little passed by the place where I had been before, when I travelled on foot to that shore. So, taking nothing out of my boat but my gun and umbrella, for it was exceedingly hot, I began my march. I reached my old bower in the evening, where I found everything as I left it; for I always kept it in good order, being my country-house.

I got over the fence, and lay down in the shade to rest my limbs, for I was very weary, and fell asleep. But judge, if you can, what a surprise I must have been in when I was awaked out of my sleep by a voice, calling me by my name several times. "Robin, Robin, Robin Crusoe! poor Robin Crusoe! Where are you, Robin Crusoe? Where are you? Where have you been?"

I was so dead asleep that I did not awake thoroughly at first; and, dozing between sleeping and waking, thought I dreamed that somebody spoke to me; but as the voice continued to repeat, "Robin Crusoe! Robin Crusoe!" I began to awake more perfectly, and was dreadfully frightened, and started up in the utmost consternation. But no sooner were my eyes open,



than I saw my Poll sitting on the top of the hedge, and immediately knew it was he that spoke to me ; for just in such a bemoaning language I used to talk to him. He had learned it so perfectly that he would sit on my finger, and lay his bill close to my face, and cry, "Poor Robin Crusoe ! Where are you ? Where have you been ? How came you here ?" and such other things as I had taught him.

However, even though I knew it was the parrot, and that indeed it could be nobody else, it was a good while before I could compose myself. I was amazed how the bird got thither. Holding out my hand, I called him by his name, and the sociable creature came to me, and continued talking, as if he was overjoyed to see me, and I carried him home.

I would have been very glad to have had my boat again on my side of the island ; but I knew not how it was practicable to get it about. As to the east side of the island, which I had gone round, my very heart would shrink to think of it. The other side of the island I did not know ; but supposing I might run the same risk there of being carried from the island, I contented myself to be without any boat, though it had been the product of so many months' labor to make it, and of so many more to get it into the sea.

In this government of my temper I remained nearly a year ; and my thoughts being very much composed as to my condition, I lived very happily in all things, except that of society. I improved myself in this time in all the mechanic exercises which my necessities put me to ; and I arrived at an unexpected perfection in my earthenware, and contrived a wheel, which made things round and shapable to look on. But I think I was never more vain of my own performance, or more joyful for anything I found out, than for being able to make a tobacco-pipe ; and though it was a very ugly, clumsy thing, and burnt red, like other earthenware, yet as it was hard and firm, and would draw the smoke, I was exceedingly comforted with it, for I had



been always used to smoking. There were pipes in the ship, but I forgot them at first, not thinking that there was tobacco in the island; and afterward, when I searched the ship again, I could not come at any pipes at all.

In my wickerware also I improved much, and made abundance of necessary baskets, not handsome, yet such as were very handy and convenient for laying things up in, or fetching things home. For example, if I killed a goat, I could hang it up in a tree, and dress it, and cut it in pieces, and bring it home in a basket; and the like by a turtle. Also, large, deep baskets were receivers for my corn, which I always rubbed out as soon as it was dry.

I began now to seriously consider what I must do when I should have no more powder; that is to say, how I should kill any goats. I had, in the third year of my being here, kept a young kid, and bred it up tame; and as I could never find it in my heart to kill the creature, it died at last of mere age. But being now in the eleventh year of my residence, and my ammunition getting low, I set myself to study some art to trap the goats, to see whether I could catch some of them alive. I made snares, and I do believe the goats were more than once taken in them; but my tackle was not good, and I always found the snares broken, and my bait devoured. At length, I dug several large pits in the earth, in places where I had observed the goats fed, and, not to trouble you with particulars, going one morning to see my pits, I found in one of them a large old he-goat; and in one of the others three kids, a male and two females.

As to the old one, I knew not what to do with him. He was so fierce, I durst not go into the pit to bring him away alive. So I let him out, and he ran away as if he had been frightened out of his wits.

Then I went to the three kids, and taking them one by one, I tied them with strings together, and with some difficulty brought them all home. It was a good while before they



would feed ; but throwing them some green barley, it tempted them, and they began to be tame. It presently occurred to me that I must keep the tame from the wild, or else my kids would run away when they grew up ; and the only method for this was to have some piece of ground, well fenced either with hedge or pale, that those within might not break out, or those without break in.

This was a great undertaking for one pair of hands ; yet as I saw there was an absolute necessity for doing it, I looked for a piece of ground where there was likely to be herbage for the goats to eat, water for them to drink, and trees to keep them from the sun. I pitched upon a plain, open piece of meadow land, which had two or three little rills of fresh water in it, and at one end was very woody. I began enclosing this piece of ground in such a manner, that my hedge must have been at least two miles about. Nor was the madness of it so great as to the compass, for if it was ten miles about, I was like to have time enough to do the work ; but I did not consider that my goats would be as wild in so much compass as if they had had the whole island, and I should have so much room to chase them in that I should never catch them.

My hedge was begun and carried on, I believe, about fifty yards, when this thought occurred to me ; so I stopped short, and resolved to enclose a piece about one hundred and fifty yards in length, and one hundred yards in breadth. As my flock increased, I could add more ground to my enclosure. This was acting with some prudence, and I went to work with courage. I was three months hedging in the first piece ; and, till I had it done, I tethered the three kids in the best part of it, as near me as possible, to make them familiar ; and very often I would carry them some ears of barley, or a handful of rice, and feed them out of my hand ; so that, after my enclosure was finished, and I let them loose, they would follow me up and down, bleating after me for a handful of corn,



This answered my end, and in about a year and a half I had a flock of twelve goats, kids and all; and in two years more I had three-and-forty. After that I enclosed five pieces of ground to feed them in, with little pens to drive them into, to take them as I wanted them, and gates out of one piece of ground into another. Now I not only had goat's flesh to feed on when I pleased, but milk too — a thing which in my beginning I did not so much as think of, and which, when it came into my thoughts, was an agreeable surprise. I had sometimes a gallon or two of milk in a day, and after a great many essays and miscarriages, I made both butter and cheese, and never lacked them afterward.

It would have made a Stoic smile to have seen me and my little family sit down to dinner. Poll, as if he had been my favorite, was the only person permitted to talk to me; my dog, who was now grown very old, sat always at my right hand; and two cats, one on one side the table, and one on the other, expecting now and then a bit from my hand, as a mark of special favor. These were not the two cats which I brought on shore at first, for both of those were dead; but the cats multiplied and these were two which I preserved tame; whereas the rest ran wild in the woods. They would often come into my house, and plunder me, till at last I was obliged to shoot them, and did kill a great many.

I was impatient, as I have observed, to have the use of my boat; and therefore sometimes I sat contriving ways to get her around the island, and I had a strange uneasiness to go to the point of the island where I went up the hill to see how the shore lay. This inclination increased every day, and at length I travelled thither, following the edge of the shore. Had any persons in England met such a man as I was, it must either have frightened them, or raised a great deal of laughter: and I could not but smile at the notion of my travelling through Yorkshire in such a dress.



I had a great high shapeless cap, made of goat's skin, with a flap hanging down behind, as well to keep the sun from me as to prevent the rain from running into my neck.

I had a short jacket of goat's skin, the skirts coming down to about the middle of the thighs, and a pair of open-kneed breeches of the same. The breeches were made of the skin of an old he-goat, whose hair hung down such a length on either side, that it reached to the middle of my legs. Stockings and shoes I had none, but had made me a pair of somethings, I scarce knew what to call them, like buskins, to flap over my legs, and lace on either side like spatterdashes,<sup>o</sup> but of a most barbarous shape, as indeed were all the rest of my clothes.

I had on a broad belt of goat's skin, which I drew together with two thongs of the same; and in a kind of frog on either side of this, instead of a sword and dagger, hung a little saw and a hatchet. I had another belt not so broad, which hung over my shoulder; and at the end of it, under my left arm, hung two pouches, both made of goat's skin, in one of which was my powder, in the other my shot. At my back I carried my basket, on my shoulder my gun, and over my head a great clumsy, ugly, goat-skin umbrella, but which, after all, was the most necessary thing I had about me next to my gun. As for my face, the color of it was not so mulatto-like as one might expect from a man not at all careful of it, and living within nine or ten degrees of the equator. My beard I had once suffered to grow till it was about a quarter of a yard long; but as I had both scissors and razors sufficient, I had cut it pretty short, except what grew on my upper lip, which I had trimmed into a large pair of Mahometan whiskers, such as I had seen worn by some Turks at Sallee. Of these mustachios, I will not say they were long enough to hang my hat on, but they were of a length and shape monstrous enough, and such as in England would have passed for frightful.

I went my new journey, and was out five or six days.



I travelled along the seashore, directly to the place where I first brought my boat to anchor to get up on the rocks; and then I climbed the same height that I was on before. Looking forward to the point of the rocks which I was obliged to double with my boat, I was surprised to find the sea all smooth and quiet — no rippling, no motion, no current, any more there than in other places.

I was at a strange loss to understand this, and resolved to spend some time in observing it, to see if nothing from the sets of the tide had occasioned it. I was presently convinced that the tide of ebb setting from the west, and joining with the waters from some great river, must be the occasion of this current; and that according as the wind blew more forcibly from the west or from the north, this current came near, or went farther from the shore of the island; for, waiting thereabouts till evening, I went up to the rock again, and then the tide of ebb being made, I plainly saw the current.

This observation convinced me that I had nothing to do but to observe the ebbing and the flowing of the tide, and I might very easily bring my boat around the island; but I had such terror upon my spirits at the remembrance of the danger I had been in, that I could not think of it.

You are to understand that now I had two plantations in the island. One was my little fortification under the rock, with the cave behind, which by this time I had enlarged into several apartments. The driest and largest apartment had a door out beyond where my wall joined to the rock and was all filled up with large earthen pots, and fourteen or fifteen great baskets, which would hold five or six bushels each. Here I laid up my stores of provisions, especially my corn. As for my wall, made with long stakes or piles, those piles grew all like trees, and were by this time so big, and spread so very much, that there was not the least appearance of any habitation behind them.



Near this dwelling of mine, but a little farther from the sea, lay two pieces of corn land, which I kept cultivated and sowed.

Besides, I had my country-seat. I kept the hedge which circled it constantly in repair to its usual height, and the ladder standing always on the inside. The trees, which at first were stakes, were now grown very firm and tall, and so cut that they might spread and grow thick and wild, and make the more agreeable shade. In the middle I had my tent, being a piece of a sail spread over poles set up for that purpose; and under this I had made a couch, with the skins of the creatures I had killed, and with other soft things, and a blanket laid on them, and a great watch-coat to cover me; and here, whenever I had occasion, I took up my habitation.

Adjoining this, I had enclosures for a part of my goats; and as I had taken an inconceivable deal of pains to fence this ground, I was anxious to see the fence kept entire, lest the goats should break through. I never left off till I had stuck the outside of the hedge so full of small stakes, that it was rather a pale than a hedge, and there was scarce room to put a hand through. Afterward when those stakes grew, as they all did in the next rainy season, they made the enclosure strong like a wall.

In this place also I had my grapes growing, which I principally depended on for my winter store of raisins, and which I never failed to preserve very carefully, as the best and most agreeable dainty of my whole diet. Indeed, they were not agreeable only, but nourishing, and refreshing to the last degree.

As this was half-way between my other habitation and the place where I had laid up my boat, I generally stopped here on my way thither. I used frequently to visit my boat; and I kept all things about, or belonging to her, in very good order. Sometimes I went out in her to divert myself, but scarcely ever



above a stone's cast or two from the shore, I was so apprehensive of being hurried out of my knowledge again by the currents or winds, or other accident.

It happened one day, about noon, going toward my boat, I was exceedingly surprised with the print of a man's naked foot on the shore, which was very plain to be seen on the sand. I stood like one thunderstruck, or as if I had seen an apparition. I listened, I looked round me, but I could hear nothing, nor see anything. I went to rising ground, to look farther. I went up the shore, and down the shore, but I could see no other impression except that one. I went to it again to observe if it might not be my fancy; but there was exactly the print of a foot — toes, heel, and every part of a foot. How it came thither I knew not, nor could in the least imagine. But after innumerable fluttering thoughts like a man perfectly confused and out of himself, I came home to my fortification, not feeling the ground I went on, dreadfully terrified, looking behind me at every two or three steps, and fancying every stump at a distance to be a man. Nor is it possible to describe how many various shapes my affrighted imagination represented things to me in; how many wild ideas were formed every moment in my fancy, and what strange unaccountable whimseys came into my thoughts by the way.

When I got to my castle (for so I called it ever after this) I fled into it like one pursued. Whether I went over by the ladder, or went in at the hole in the rock, which I called a door, I cannot remember; for never frightened hare fled to cover, or fox to earth, with more terror of mind than I to this retreat.

I had no sleep that night. The farther I was from the occasion of my fright, the greater my apprehensions were, which is something contrary to the nature of such things, and especially to the usual practice of all creatures in fear; but I was so embarrassed with my own frightful ideas of the thing, that I formed nothing but dismal imaginations to myself, even



though I was now a great way off it. Sometimes I fancied it was done by the devil; and reason joined in this supposition: for how was it possible a man should come there? But then it was preposterous to think that Satan should take human shape in such a place, where there could be no manner of occasion for it but to leave the print of his foot behind him. I considered that the devil might have found out abundance of other ways to have terrified me than this of the single print of a foot; that as I lived quite on the other side of the island, he would never have been so simple as to leave a mark in a place where it was ten thousand to one whether I should ever see it or not, and in the sand, too, where the first surge of the sea, upon a high wind, would have effaced it entirely.

Abundance of such things as these assisted to argue me out of all apprehensions of its being the devil; and I presently concluded that it must be some more dangerous creature; that it must be some of the savages of the mainland, who had wandered out to sea in their canoes, and driven by the currents or contrary winds, had made the island, and had been on shore, but were gone away again to sea: being as loath, perhaps, to stay in this desolate island as I would have been to have them.

While these reflections were rolling upon my mind, I was very thankful that I was not thereabouts at the time the savages landed. Then terrible thoughts racked my imagination about their having found my boat, and that, if so, they would certainly come again in greater numbers, and devour me; that if they should not find me, yet they would find my enclosure, destroy my corn, and carry away all my flock of tame goats, and I should perish at last of want.

I reproached myself with my laziness, that would not sow any more corn one year than would just serve me till the next season, as if no accident could intervene to prevent my enjoying the crop that was upon the ground; and this I thought so just a reproof, that I resolved for the future to have two or



three years' corn beforehand, so that, whatever happened, I might not perish for want of bread.

In the middle of these cogitations, it came into my thoughts, that all this might be a mere chimera of my own, and that this footprint might be the mark of my own foot, when I came on shore from my boat. Why might I not come that way from the boat, as well as go that way to the boat? I considered that I could by no means tell for certain where I had trod, and where I had not; and that if this was only the print of my own foot, I had played the part of those fools who try to make stories of spectres and apparitions, and then are themselves frightened at them more than anybody else.

Now I took courage, and peeped abroad again. I had not stirred out of my castle for three days and nights, so that I began to be short of provisions; for I had little or nothing within doors but some barley-cakes and water. Then I knew that my goats needed to be milked too, which usually was my evening diversion; and that the poor creatures must be in great pain and inconvenience for want of it. Heartening myself, therefore, I went to milk my flock; but to see with what fear I went forward, how often I looked behind me, how I was ready, every now and then, to run for my life, it would have made any one have thought I was haunted with an evil conscience.

However, as I went down thus two or three days, and having seen nothing, I began to be a little bolder, and presently went to the shore again to see this print of a foot, and measure it by my own. But when I came to the place, it appeared evident that when I laid up my boat, I could not possibly have been on shore there. Secondly, when I came to measure the mark with my own foot, I found my foot not so large by a great deal. Both these things filled my head with new imaginations, and gave me the vapors again, so that I shook with cold like one in an ague; and I went home, filled with the



belief that some man or men had been on the island, and I might be surprised before I was aware ; and what course to take for my security I knew not.

The first thing I proposed to myself was to throw down my enclosures, and turn all my tame goats wild into the woods, that the enemy might not find them ; then to dig up my two cornfields, that they might not find such a grain there ; then to demolish my bower and tent, that they might not see any vestiges of habitation, and be prompted to seek out the persons inhabiting.

These were the subjects of the first night's cogitations, after I was come home again, while the apprehensions which had so overrun my mind were fresh upon me. This confusion of my thoughts kept me wakeful all night ; but in the morning I fell asleep ; and I slept very soundly, and awaked much better composed than I had been before. Now I began to think sedately ; and I concluded that this island which was so exceeding pleasant and fruitful, was not so entirely abandoned as I had imagined ; that sometimes boats from the mainland, either with design, or driven by cross winds, might come to this place. I had lived here fifteen years now, and had not met with the least shadow or figure of any people ; and, if at any time they should be driven here, it was probable they went away as soon as ever they could. The most I could suggest any danger from was from such casual accidental landing ; and therefore, I had nothing to do but to have some safe retreat.

I began sorely to repent that I had dug my cave so large as to bring a door through beyond where my fortification joined to the rock. Upon maturely considering this, I resolved to build a second fortification, in a semicircle just where I had planted a double row of trees about twelve years before ; these trees having been planted so thick, they wanted but few piles driven between them, and my wall would be finished. Not content with that I thickened the wall with pieces of timber, old cables, and



everything I could think of, leaving in it seven little holes, about as big as I might put my arm out at; and through the seven holes I contrived to plant the muskets, of which I got seven to shore out of the ship. These I planted like cannon, and fitted them into frames, that held them so I could fire all the seven guns in two minutes' time. The wall I was many a weary month finishing, and yet never thought myself safe till it was done.

Afterward, I stuck all the ground without my wall, for a great way, as full with stakes of the osier-like wood, which I found so apt to grow, as they could well stand; insomuch that I believe I set nearly twenty thousand of them, leaving a pretty large space between them and my wall, that I might have room to see an enemy, and assailants might have no shelter from the young trees, if they attempted to approach my outer wall.

In two years' time, I had a thick grove; and in five or six years' time I had a wood before my dwelling grown so monstrous thick and strong that it was perfectly impassable; and no one would ever imagine that there was any habitation behind it. As for the way which I proposed to go in or out (for I left no avenue), it was by setting up a ladder to a ledge of the rock which left room to stand on and draw the ladder up and place it so it would reach to the top. When the ladder was taken down, no man living could come down to me without mischieving himself.

Thus I took all the measures human prudence could suggest for my own preservation.



## CHAPTER IX

I place part of my herd of goats in a more retired part of my dominions — I find on the shore skulls and other bones of human bodies where the savages have feasted on their fellow-creatures — Of my inventions to destroy some of the cannibals — I discover a natural cave in the interior of the island.

WHILE this was doing, I was not altogether careless of my other affairs ; for I had great concern for my little herd of goats. They not only began to be sufficient for me, without the expense of powder and shot, but also abated the fatigue of my hunting after the wild ones ; and I was loath to lose the advantage of them, and to have them all to nurse up over again.

I could think of but two ways to preserve them. One was to dig a cave, and to drive them into it every night. The other was to enclose two or three little bits of land, remote from one another, and much concealed, where I might keep about half a dozen young goats in each place ; so that if any disaster happened to the flock in general, I might be able to raise more with little trouble : and this, though it would require a good deal of labor, I thought was the most rational design.

Accordingly, I spent some time to find the most retired parts of the island ; and I pitched on one which was as private as my heart could wish. It was a little damp piece of ground, in the middle of the thick woods, where I almost lost myself once, endeavoring to come back from the eastern part of the island. There I found a clear piece of land of nearly three acres. I immediately went to work, and, in less than a month's time, I had so fenced it round that my flock, which was not so wild now as at first, would be well secured in it. Without further delay, I removed ten she-goats, and two he-goats, to this piece. After I had thus secured one part of my little living stock, I went about the whole island, searching for another private place to



make such another deposit ; when, wandering more to the west point of the island than I had ever done yet, and looking out to sea, I thought I saw a boat at a great distance. I had found a perspective glass in one of the seamen's chests which I saved out of our ship, but I had it not about me ; and though I looked till my eyes were not able to look any longer, whether it was a boat or not, I do not know ; but I resolved to go no more out without the perspective glass in my pocket.

When I was come down the hill to the end of the island, where, indeed, I had never been before, I was presently convinced that the seeing the print of a man's foot was not such a strange thing in the island as I had imagined ; and that it was a special providence that I was cast upon the side of the island where the savages never came, for I was perfectly confounded and amazed ; nor is it possible for me to express the horror of my mind, at seeing the shore spread with skulls, and other bones of human bodies ; and particularly, I observed a place where there had been a fire made, and a circle dug in the earth, where the savage wretches had sat down to their inhuman feastings upon the bodies of their fellow-creatures.

I was so astonished with the sight of these things that I entertained no notions of any danger to myself for a long while. All my apprehensions were buried in the thoughts of such brutality, which, though I had heard of often, yet I never had so near a view of before. In short, I turned away my face from the horrid spectacle ; my stomach grew sick, and I was just at the point of fainting, when nature discharged the disorder from my stomach ; and having vomited with uncommon violence, I was a little relieved, but could not bear to stay in the place a moment. So I got me up the hill with all the speed I could.

I went home to my castle, and began to be much easier now, as to the safety of my circumstances, than I had been before : for I observed that these wretches never came to the island in



search of what they could get ; having often, no doubt, been up in the woody part of it, without finding anything to their purpose. I had been here almost eighteen years, and I might be eighteen years more as entirely concealed as I was now, if I did not discover myself to them, which I had no manner of occasion to do ; it being my only business to keep myself entirely concealed where I was, unless I found a better sort of creatures than cannibals to make myself known to.

Yet I entertained such an abhorrence of the savage wretches that I have been speaking of, and of the wretched custom of devouring and eating one another, that I continued pensive and sad, and kept close within my own circle for almost two years after this. When I say my own circle, I mean by it my three plantations, viz., my castle, my country-seat (as I called my bower), and my enclosure in the woods : nor did I so much as go to look after my boat.

Time, however, and the satisfaction I had that I was in no danger of being discovered by these people, wore off my uneasiness about them ; and I began to live in the same composed manner as before, only that I used more caution, and kept my eyes more about me ; and particularly, I was more cautious in firing my gun, lest any of them, being on the island, should happen to hear it. It was, therefore, a very good providence to me that I had furnished myself with a tame breed of goats, and had no need to hunt any more about the woods, or shoot at them. If I did catch any of them after this, it was by traps and snares : so that for two years I believe I did not fire my gun once, though I never went without it ; and, as I had saved three pistols out of the ship, I always carried them with me, or at least two of them, sticking them in my goat-skin belt. Also I furnished up one of the great cutlasses, and made me a belt to put it on ; so that I was now a most formidable fellow to look at when I went abroad.

The frights I had been in about the savages, and the concern



I had been in for my preservation, had put a stop to the invention of improvements for my own convenience. My invention now ran quite another way; for I could think of nothing but how I might destroy some of these monsters in their cruel, bloody entertainment.

I went so far in my imagination, that I employed several days to find proper places to put myself in ambuscade, to watch for them.

At length I found a place on the side of a hill, where I was satisfied I might securely wait till I saw their boats coming; and might then convey myself unseen into some thickets of trees, near the shore; and there I might sit and observe all their doings, and take my full aim at their heads when they were so close together that it would be next to impossible that I should miss wounding three or four of them at the first shot. In this place, then, I prepared two muskets and my ordinary fowling-piece. The two muskets I loaded with a brace of slugs each, and four or five smaller bullets; and the fowling-piece I loaded with nearly a handful of swan-shot. I also loaded my pistols with about four bullets each; and in this posture, well provided with ammunition for a second and third charge, I prepared myself.

After I had thus laid the scheme, I continually made my tour every morning to the top of the hill, which was from my castle about three miles, to observe if there were any boats on the sea, coming near the island; but I began to tire of this hard duty, after I had for two months constantly kept watch, and came always back without any discovery; and I began, with cooler and calmer thoughts, to consider what authority or call I had to be judge and executioner upon these men whom Heaven had thought fit, for so many ages, to allow to go on unpunished. I debated with myself thus: "How do I know what God himself judges in this particular case? These people do not devour each other as a crime. It is not against



their own consciences. They think it no more a crime to kill a captive taken in war than we do to kill an ox ; or to eat human flesh than we do to eat mutton.”

When I considered this a little, it followed necessarily that these people were not murderers, in the sense that I had before condemned them : and I began, by little and little, to conclude I had taken wrong measures in my resolution to attack the savages ; and that it was not my business to meddle with them, unless they first attacked me. Also if I did not kill all that should be on shore when I made my onslaught, even a single one escaping would tell his country-people what had happened, and they would come over by thousands to revenge the death of their fellows, and I should only bring on myself a certain destruction, which, at present, I had no manner of occasion for.

Upon the whole, I concluded that I ought, neither in principle nor in policy, one way or other, to concern myself in this affair ; that my business was, by all possible means, to conceal myself from them, and not to leave the least sign by which they could guess there were any living creatures upon the island, of human shape.

In this disposition I continued for nearly a year ; and so far was I from desiring an occasion for falling upon these wretches, that in all that time I never once went up the hill to see whether there were any of them in sight, or to know whether any of them had been on shore, that I might not be tempted to renew my contrivances against them : only this I did ; I went and removed my boat, which I had on the other side of the island, and took it to the east end, and I ran it into a little cove under some high rocks, where I knew, by reason of the currents, the savages durst not come with their canoes.

Besides this, I kept myself more retired than ever, and seldom went from my castle, except to milk my goats, and manage my little flock in the wood, which was quite out of danger ;



for certain it is that these savage people, who sometimes visited this island, never wandered off from the coast, and I doubt not but they might have been several times on shore after my apprehensions of them had made me cautious. I looked back with some horror upon the thoughts of what my condition would have been, if I had been discovered before that ; when, unarmed, except with one gun, and that loaded often with small shot, I walked everywhere, peeping and peering about to see what I could get. What a surprise would I have been in, if, when I discovered the print of a man's foot, I had instead seen fifteen or twenty savages, and found them pursuing me ! I had the care of my safety more now upon my hands than that of my food. I did not drive a nail, or chop a stick of wood for fear the noise should be heard. Above all, I was intolerably uneasy at making any fire, lest the smoke, which would be visible at a great distance, should betray me. For this reason, I removed that part of my business which required fire, such as burning of pots, into my new apartment in the woods : where, after I had been some time, I found a natural cave in the earth, which went in a vast way. I dare say, no savage, had he been at the mouth of it, would have been so hardy as to venture in ; nor, indeed, would any man, but one who, like me, wanted nothing so much as a safe retreat.

The mouth of this hollow was at the bottom of a great rock, where, by mere accident, I was cutting down some thick branches of trees to make charcoal ; and before I go on I must observe the reason of my making this charcoal. I was afraid of making a smoke about my habitation, and yet I could not live there without baking my bread, cooking my meat, etc. ; so I contrived to burn some wood here, as I had seen done in England, under turf, till it became dry coal. Then putting the fire out, I preserved the coal to carry home and use there without danger of smoke.

But this is by the by. While I was cutting down some



wood here, I perceived that, behind a very thick branch of low brushwood, there was a hollow place. I was curious to look into it; and getting into the mouth of it, I found it was large enough for me to stand upright in: but I must confess that I made more haste out than I did in, when looking farther into the place I saw two shining eyes of some creature — whether devil or man I knew not. However, after a pause, I recovered, and began to tell myself that I might well think there was nothing in this cave more frightful than myself. Upon this I took up a firebrand, and in I rushed with the stick flaming in my hand. I had not gone three steps in, when I was almost as much frightened as before; for I heard a very loud sigh, like that of a man in pain, and it was followed by a broken noise, as of words half expressed, and then a deep sigh again. I stepped back, struck with such a surprise that it put me into a cold sweat, and if I had had a hat on my head, I will not answer for it that my hair might not have lifted it off. But plucking up my spirits as well as I could, and encouraging myself a little with considering that the power and presence of God was everywhere, and was able to protect me, I stepped forward again, and by the dim light of the firebrand, holding it up over my head, I saw lying on the ground a monstrous, frightful old he-goat, just making his will, as we say, gasping for life, and dying indeed of old age. I stirred him a little to see if I could get him out, but he was not able to raise himself.

I now began to look round me, when I found the cave was very small. I observed there was a place that went in farther, but so low that, having no candle, I did not venture into it, but resolved to come again.

Accordingly, the next day, I came provided with six large candles of my own making (for I made very good candles now of goats' tallow, but was hard set for candle-wick, using sometimes rags or rope-yarn, and sometimes the dried rind of a weed



like nettles) ; and going into this low place I was obliged to creep on all-fours almost ten yards. When I got through the strait, I found the roof rose nearly twenty feet ; and never had such a glorious sight been seen in the island, I dare say, as I saw round the sides and roof of this cave. The walls reflected a hundred thousand lights to me from my candle. What it was in the rock — whether diamonds, or other precious stones, or gold — I knew not.

The floor was dry and level, and had some small loose gravel on it, so there was no nauseous or venomous creature to be seen, neither was there any damp or wet on the sides or roof. The only difficulty was the entrance. However, as it was a place of security, and such a retreat as I wanted, I rejoiced at the discovery, and resolved, without delay, to bring some of those things which I was most anxious about to this place ! Particularly, I resolved to bring hither my magazine of powder, and all my spare arms ; viz., two fowling-pieces — for I had three in all — and three muskets — for of them I had eight in all, and I kept in my castle five, which stood ready mounted like pieces of cannon on my outmost defence, and were ready also to take out upon any expedition.

On removing my ammunition, I happened to open the barrel of powder which I took out of the sea, and which had been wet, and I found that the water had penetrated three or four inches into the powder, which caking and growing hard, had preserved the inside like a kernel in the shell, so that I had nearly sixty pounds of very good powder in the centre of the cask. I carried all away thither, never keeping over two or three pounds of powder with me in my castle, for fear of a surprise. I also carried thither all the lead I had for bullets.

I fancied myself now like one of the ancient giants who are said to have lived in caves and holes in the rocks, where none could come at them ; for I persuaded myself, while I was here, that if five hundred savages were to hunt me, they could never



find me — or if they did, they would not venture to attack me.

The old goat I found expiring died in the mouth of the cave the next day ; and I decided it would be much easier to dig a great hole there, and throw him in and cover him with earth, than to drag him out.

## CHAPTER X

Of my life and surroundings in the twenty-third year of my residence in the island — I am startled one foul night with the noise of a gun fired at sea — In the morning I see the wreck of a ship cast away on some distant rocks — I make a voyage in my boat to the wreck — The savages land on my side of the island with several captives — One of the prisoners escapes and runs up into the island — I rescue him from his pursuers and he becomes my servant and I name him Friday.

I WAS now in the twenty-third year of my residence in this island, and was so naturalized to the place and the manner of living, that, could I have enjoyed the certainty that no savages would come to disturb me, I could have been content to spend the rest of my time there, till I laid me down and died, like the old goat in the cave. I had also some little diversions and amusements. I had taught my Poll, as I noted before, to speak ; and he did it so familiarly, and talked so plainly, that it was very pleasant to me. My dog was a loving companion for no less than sixteen years, and then died. As for my cats, they all ran wild into the woods, except certain favorites, which were part of my family. Besides these I always kept two or three household kids about me, that I taught to feed out of my hands ; and I had two more parrots, which talked pretty well, and would call “ Robin Crusoe,” but none talked like my first ; for I did not take so much pains teaching them. I had also several tame sea-fowls I caught on the shore, and whose wings I had cut to prevent them from flying away. The little stakes



I had planted before my castle-wall being now grown up to a good thick grove, these fowls all lived among the low trees, which was very agreeable to me.

It was now the month of December, and this, being the particular time of my harvest, I was much abroad in the fields. Going out pretty early one morning, I saw a fire on the shore, at a distance of about two miles, which made me certain there were savages landed on my side of the island.

I was terribly surprised at the sight, and stopped within my grove, not daring to go out; and yet I had no peace within, from the apprehensions that if these savages, in rambling over the island, should find my corn, or any of my works and improvements, they would immediately conclude there were people in the place, and would never rest till they had found me. In this extremity I went directly to my castle, and made all things without look as wild and natural as I could.

Then I prepared myself within. I loaded all my cannon, as I called them — that is to say, my muskets, which were mounted on my fortification, and all my pistols, and resolved to defend myself to the last gasp. In this posture I continued about two hours, and began to be impatient for intelligence abroad. After sitting a while and musing what I should do, I was not able to bear staying in ignorance any longer. So setting up my ladder to the side of the hill, where there was a flat place, as I observed before, and then pulling the ladder after me, I set it up again, and mounted to the top of the hill, and taking out my perspective-glass, I presently found there were no less than nine savages sitting round a small fire they had made, not to warm them, for they had no need of that; the weather being extremely hot, but to cook some of their barbarous diet of human flesh.

They had two canoes with them, which they had hauled up on the shore; and as it was then ebb of tide, they seemed to wait for the return of the flood that they might go away.



As I expected, so it proved ; for, as soon as the tide made to the westward, I saw them all take boat. I should have observed, that for an hour or more before they went off they were dancing, and I could easily discern their postures and gestures by my glass.

As soon as I saw them shipped and gone, I took two guns on my shoulders, and two pistols in my girdle, and my great sword by my side, and with all the speed I was able to make went down to the shore. I could see the marks of horror which the dismal work they had been about had left behind, the blood, the bones, and part of the flesh of human bodies devoured by those wretches with merriment and sport. I was so filled with indignation at the sight, that I now began to premeditate the destruction of the next party that I saw there, let them be how many soever. Nor did I consider at all that if I killed one party — suppose of ten or a dozen — I was still the next day, or week, or month, to kill another, and so another, even till I should be, at length, no less a murderer than they were in being man-eaters — and perhaps much more so.

But to waive all this for a while. It was in the middle of May, on the sixteenth day, as well as my poor wooden calendar would reckon, for I marked the post still, that it blew a storm of wind all day, with a great deal of lightning and thunder, and a very foul night came after it. As I was reading the Bible, and taken up with very serious thoughts, I was surprised with the noise of a gun, as I thought, fired at sea.

I started up in great haste ; and, in a trice, clapped my ladder to the middle place of the rock, and pulled it after me ; and, mounting it the second time, got to the top of the hill the very moment that a flash of fire bid me listen for a second gun, which, in about half a minute, I heard ; and by the sound, knew it was from that part of the sea where I was driven out with the current in my boat.



I immediately considered that there must be some ship in distress, and that these guns were signals to obtain help. I had the presence of mind to think, that though I could not help those who were in the ship, they might help me. So I brought together all the dry wood I could get at hand, and, making a pile, I set it on fire upon the hill. The wood was dry, and blazed freely ; and I was certain the ship must see it. As soon as my fire blazed up, I heard another gun, and after that several more from the same quarter. I plied my fire all night long ; and when it was broad day, and the air cleared up, I saw something at a great distance at sea, full east of the island, whether a sail or a hull I could not distinguish — no, not with my glass ; the distance was so great, and the weather still somewhat hazy.

I looked frequently at it, and soon perceived that it did not move. So I presently concluded that it was a ship at anchor ; and being eager, you may be sure, to be satisfied, I took my gun in my hand, and ran toward the east side of the island, to the rocks where I had formerly been carried away with the current ; and getting up there, the weather by this time being perfectly clear, I could plainly see, to my great sorrow, the wreck of a ship on those rocks which I found when I was out in my boat ; and which rocks, as they checked the violence of the stream, and made a counter-stream, or eddy, were the occasion of my recovering from the most desperate, hopeless condition that ever I had been in in all my life. The men, whoever they were, that had been on the ship, must, as I thought, have endeavored to save themselves by the help of their boat ; but the sea running very high, they might have been cast away. Again, I imagined they had some other ship in company, which, upon the signals of distress, had taken them up and carried them off. Other times, I fancied they were all in their boat, and, being hurried away by the current that I had been formerly in, were carried out into the great ocean, where there was only misery and perishing.



Nothing could make it rational to expect that they did not all perish, except the possibility of their being taken up by another ship in company ; and I saw not the least sign or appearance of any such thing. I cannot explain what a strange longing I felt upon this sight, breaking out sometimes thus : “ Oh, that there had been one soul saved out of this ship, to have escaped to me, that I might have a companion, a fellow-creature to speak to me and to converse with ! ”

In all the time of my solitary life, I never felt so earnest, so strong a desire after the society of my fellow-creatures, or so deep a regret at the want of it. But it was not to be. Either their fate, or mine, or both, forbade it, and I had only the affliction, some days after, to see the corpse of a drowned boy come on shore at the end of the island which was next the shipwreck. He had on a seaman’s waistcoat, a pair of open-kneed linen drawers, and a blue linen shirt ; nothing to direct me to guess what nation he was of.

It was now calm, and I had a great mind to venture out in my boat to this wreck, not doubting I should find something on board that would be useful to me. But that did not appeal to me so much as the possibility there might be yet some living creature on board, whose life I might not only save, but, by saving that life, could comfort my own. This thought clung so to my heart that I could not be quiet, and I hastened back to my castle, and prepared for a voyage. I took a quantity of bread, a great pot for fresh water, a compass to steer by, and a basket of raisins ; and thus loading myself, I went to my boat, got the water out, put all I had brought in her, and then returned for more. My second burden was a great bag full of rice, the umbrella to set up over my head for a shade, another large pot full of fresh water, and a bottle of goat’s-milk, and a cheese ; all which, with great labor and sweat, I brought to my boat ; and praying to God to direct my voyage, I put out, and, paddling the canoe along the shore, came at last to the utmost



point of the island on that side. Now I was to launch out into the ocean. I looked on the rapid currents which ran constantly on both sides of the island at a distance, and my heart began to fail me ; and having hauled my boat to the shore, I stepped out, and sat down on a rising bit of ground, very pensive and anxious, between fear and desire about my voyage. As I was musing, I could perceive that the tide was turned, and my going was impracticable for many hours. Presently it occurred to me to climb to the highest piece of ground I could find, and observe how the sets of the currents lay when the flood came in, that I might judge whether, if I was driven one way out, I might expect to be driven another way home, with the same rapidity. This thought was no sooner in my head than I cast my eyes upon a little hill, which sufficiently overlooked the sea both ways. Here I found that the current of ebb set out close by the south point of the island, and the current of the flood set in close by the shore of the north side, and that I had nothing to do but to keep to the north of the island in my return, and I should do well enough.

Encouraged with this observation, I resolved, the next morning, to set out with the first of the tide ; and reposed myself for the night in my canoe. When I launched out the following day, I first made a little out to sea, full north, till I began to feel the benefit of the current, which set eastward, and which carried me at a great rate ; and yet did not so hurry me as the current on the south side had done before, so as to take from me all government of the boat ; but I went, at a great rate, directly for the wreck, and in less than two hours I came to it.

It was a dismal sight to look at. The ship, which, by its building, I knew was Spanish, stuck fast, jammed in between two rocks. All the stern was beaten to pieces by the sea, and her mainmast and foremast were broken short off ; but her bowsprit was sound, and the head and bow firm. When I got close to her, a dog appeared, who, seeing me coming, yelped and



cried ; and, as soon as I called him, jumped into the sea to come to me. I took him into the boat, and found him almost dead with hunger and thirst. I gave him a cake of my bread, and he devoured it like a ravenous wolf that had been starving a fortnight. I then gave the poor creature some fresh water, with which, if I would have let him, he would have burst himself.

After this I went on board. The first sight I met with was two men drowned in the forecastle, with their arms fast about one another. I concluded that when the ship struck, the sea broke so high and so continually over her, that the men were not able to bear it, and were strangled with the constant rushing in of the water. Except the dog, there was nothing left in the ship that had life.

I saw several chests, which I believe belonged to some of the seamen ; and I got two of them into the boat, without examining what was in them. Had the stern of the ship been fixed, and the forepart broken off, I am persuaded I might have made a good voyage ; for, by what I found in these two chests, the ship had a great deal of wealth on board ; and, if I may guess from the course she steered, she must have been bound from Buenos Ayres, or the Rio de la Plata, to Havana, in the Gulf of Mexico.

I found, besides these chests, several muskets, and a great powder horn, with about four pounds of powder in it. As for the muskets, I had no occasion for them, but I took the powder-horn. I took a fire-shovel and tongs, which I wanted extremely ; and also two little brass kettles, a copper pot, and a gridiron ; and with this cargo, and the dog, I came away, the tide beginning to make home again. The same evening I reached the island, weary and fatigued to the last degree.

I reposed that night in the boat ; and in the morning I resolved to harbor what I had got in my new cave, and not carry it home to my castle. After refreshing myself, I got all my cargo on shore, and when I came to open the chests, I found in



one two pots of very good sweetmeats, and some shirts, which were very welcome to me ; and about a dozen and a half of white linen handkerchiefs and colored neckcloths. The handkerchiefs were also very welcome, being exceedingly refreshing to wipe my face with on a hot day. When I came to the till in the chest, I found three great bags of pieces of eight, about eleven hundred pieces in all ; and in one of the bags, wrapped up in a paper, six doubloons ° of gold, and some small bars of gold ; I suppose these bars might all weigh nearly a pound.

In the other chest were some clothes, but of slight value. Upon the whole, I got very little by this voyage that was of any use ; for as to the money, I had no manner of occasion for it. It was to me as the dirt under my feet, and I would have given it all for three or four pairs of English shoes and stockings, which were things I greatly wanted, but had none on my feet for many years. I had, indeed, got two pairs of shoes now, which I took off the feet of the two drowned men I saw in the wreck, but they were not like our English shoes, either for ease or service, being rather what we call pumps ° than shoes.

Having brought all my things on shore and secured them, I paddled my boat to her old harbor, where I laid her up, and made the best of my way to my habitation. I found everything safe and quiet. I began now to live after my usual fashion, only that I did not go abroad much ; and if I did stir with any freedom, it was always to the east part of the island, where I was pretty well satisfied the savages never came, and where I could go without so many precautions, and such a load of arms and ammunition as I always carried with me if I went the other way.

I lived in this condition nearly two years ; but at length I was surprised one morning early by seeing no less than five canoes on shore together on my side the island, and the people who belonged to them all landed and out of my sight. Knowing that they always came four or six, or sometimes more, in a



boat, I lay still in my castle, perplexed and discomforted. However, I put myself into all the postures for an attack that I had formerly provided, and was ready for action, if anything had presented. Having waited a good while, listening to hear if they made any noise, I set my guns at the foot of my ladder, and clambered up to the top of the hill, by my two stages, as usual; standing so, however, that my head did not appear above the hill. Here I observed, by the help of my perspective-glass, that the savages were no less than thirty in number; that they had a fire kindled, and that they had meat dressed. How they had cooked it, I knew not, or what it was; but they were all dancing with many barbarous gestures round the fire.

While I was thus looking on, I perceived, by my perspective, two miserable wretches dragged from the boats, where, it seems, they were tied. One of them immediately fell, knocked down with a club or wooden sword; and two or three savages were promptly at work preparing him for their cookery, while the other victim was left standing by himself, till they should be ready for him. At that very moment this poor wretch, seeing himself a little at liberty, and unbound, Nature inspired him with hopes of life and he started away, and ran with incredible swiftness along the sands, directly toward that part of the coast where my habitation was.

I was dreadfully frightened. However, I kept my station, and my spirits began to recover when I found that only three men followed him; and I was still more encouraged, when I found that he gained ground. There was, between him and my castle, the creek, where I landed my cargoes out of the ship; and this he must necessarily swim, or be captured; but when the savage came thither, he made nothing of it, though the tide was then up; but, plunging in, swam through, landed, and ran on with exceeding strength and swiftness. When the three pursuers came to the creek, I found that two of them could swim. The third could not, and, standing on the other side, he



looked, but went no farther, and soon after turned back ; which, as it happened, was very well for him.

It came very warmly upon my thoughts that now was the time to get me a servant, and that I was plainly called by Providence to save this poor creature's life. I immediately ran down the ladder with all possible expedition, fetched my two guns, and getting up again to the top of the hill, I crossed toward the sea. Having a very short cut, and all down hill, I clapped myself in the way between the pursuers and the pursued, hallooing aloud to him that fled, who was at first perhaps as much frightened at me as at them ; but I beckoned with my hand to him to come back ; and, in the meantime, I slowly advanced toward the two that followed. Then rushing upon the foremost, I knocked him down with the stock of my gun. I was loath to fire, because I would not have the rest hear ; though at that distance, being out of sight, they would not have known what to make of it. The other who pursued stopped ; but as I came nearer, I perceived he had a bow and arrow, and was fitting the arrow to shoot at me. So I was obliged to shoot him, and I killed him at the first shot.

The poor savage who fled, though he saw both his enemies fallen and killed, as he thought, yet was so surprised with the fire and noise of my gun that he stood stock still, and neither came forward nor went backward, though he seemed rather inclined still to fly. I halloood again to him, and made signs to come, which he easily understood, and advanced a little way ; then stopped, and then came a little farther, and stopped again. I gave him all the signs of encouragement that I could think of ; and he came nearer and nearer, kneeling down every ten or twelve steps, in token of acknowledgment for saving his life. I smiled at him, and looked pleasantly, and at length, he came close to me. Then he kneeled down again, laid his head on the ground, and, taking me by the foot, set my foot on his head. This, it seems, was in token of swearing to be my slave forever. I took him up, and encouraged him.



But there was more work to do yet ; for I perceived the savage whom I had knocked down was not killed, but stunned with the blow, and began to come to himself. So I pointed to him, and showed my savage that he was not dead. Upon this my savage spoke some words to me, and though I could not understand them, yet I thought they were pleasant ; for they were the first sound of a man's voice that I had heard, my own excepted, for more than twenty-five years. There was no time for such reflections now. The savage who was knocked down had recovered himself so far as to sit up, and I perceived that my savage began to be afraid ; but he made a motion to me to lend him my sword, which hung naked in a belt by my side, and he no sooner had it, than he ran to his enemy, and at one blow cut off his head. When he had done this, he came laughing to me in sign of triumph, and brought me the sword.

That which astonished him most, was to know how I killed the other Indian so far off. Pointing, he made signs to be allowed to go to him ; and I gave permission, as well as I could. When he came to him, he stood like one amazed, looking at him, first on one side, then on the other. He took up his bow and arrows, and came back. Now I turned to go away, and beckoned him to follow me, making signs that more savages might come after them.

Upon this he made signs to me that he should bury them with sand, that they might not be seen by the rest, if they followed ; and I made signs to him to do so. He fell to work ; and soon had scraped a hole in the sand with his hands, big enough to bury the first in, and then dragged him into it, and covered him ; and did so by the other also. I believe he had buried them both in a quarter of an hour. We then went to my cave, on the farther part of the island.

Here I gave him bread and a bunch of raisins to eat, and a drink of water, which I found he was indeed in great distress for from his running ; and having refreshed him, I made signs



for him to lie down to sleep, showing him a place where I had some rice straw, and a blanket upon it, which I used to sleep on myself sometimes. So the poor creature lay down, and went to sleep.

He was a comely, handsome fellow, perfectly well made, with straight, strong limbs, not too large, tall, and, as I reckon, about twenty-six years of age. He had a very good countenance. His hair was long and black, not curled like wool; his forehead high and large; and a great vivacity and sparkling sharpness in his eyes. The color of his skin was not black, but of a dun olive-color, that had in it something very agreeable, though not easy to describe. His face was round and plump; his nose small, and he had a very good mouth, and fine teeth as white as ivory.

After he had slumbered about half-an-hour, he awoke and came out of the cave to me, for I had been milking my goats, which I had in the enclosure just by. When he espied me, he came running to me, laying himself down upon the ground, with all possible signs of a humble, thankful disposition. At last he laid his head flat on the ground, close to me, and set one of my feet upon his head, as he had done before; and after this, made signs to let me know how he would serve me so long as he lived. I began to speak to him, and teach him to speak to me; and, first, I let him know his name should be FRIDAY, which was the day I saved his life. I taught him to say Master, and let him know that was to be my name. I likewise taught him to say Yes and No, and to understand the meaning of them. I gave him some milk in an earthen pot, and let him see me drink it before him, and sop my bread in it; and gave him a cake of bread to do the like, which he quickly complied with, and made signs that it was very good.

I stayed there with him all that night; but, as soon as it was day, I beckoned him to come with me, and let him know I would give him some clothes; at which he seemed very glad.



As we went by the place where he had buried the two men, he pointed exactly to the spot, making signs to me that we should dig them up and eat them. At this I appeared very angry, expressed my abhorrence, made as if I would vomit at the thoughts of it, and beckoned him to come away. I then led him up to the top of the hill, to see if his enemies were gone, and pulling out my glass, I looked, and saw the place where they had been, but no appearance of them or their canoes; so that it was plain they were gone, and had left their two comrades behind, without any search after them.

But I was not content with this discovery; and I took my man Friday with me, giving him the sword in his hand, with the bow and arrows at his back, which I found he could use very dexterously, making him carry one gun for me, and I two for myself; and away we marched to the place where these creatures had been — for I had a mind now to get some fuller intelligence of them. When I came to the place, my very blood ran chill in my veins, and my heart sank within me at the horror of the spectacle. Indeed, it was a dreadful sight, though Friday made nothing of it. The place was covered with human bones, the ground dyed with the blood, and pieces of flesh left here and there, half-eaten, mangled, and scorched; and, in short, all the tokens of the triumphant feast they had been making after a victory over their enemies. Friday made me understand that they brought over four prisoners; that three of them were eaten, and that he, pointing to himself, was the fourth.

I caused Friday to gather all the bones, flesh, and whatever remained, and lay them together in a heap, and make a great fire upon it, and burn them all to ashes. When he had done this we went back to our castle, and there I fell to work for my man Friday. I gave him a pair of linen drawers, which, with a little alteration, fitted him very well. Then I made him a jerkin of goat's skin, as well as my skill would allow (for I was



now a tolerably good tailor); and I gave him a cap which I made of hare's skin, very convenient, and fashionable enough, and thus he was clothed, for the present. It is true, he went awkwardly in these clothes at first; and the sleeves of the waist-coat galled his shoulders and the inside of his arms — but with a little easing them where he complained they hurt him, at length he took to them very well.

The next day, after I came home to my hutch with him, I began to consider where I should lodge him; and, that I might be perfectly easy myself, I made a little tent for him in the vacant place between my two fortifications. As there was a door or entrance there into my cave, I made a framed door-case, and a door, and set it up in the passage, a little within the entrance; and, causing the door to open on the inside, I barred it up at night, taking in my ladders, too; so that Friday could no way come at me inside of my innermost wall, without making so much noise in getting over that it must needs awaken me; for my first wall had now a complete roof over it of long poles, leaning up to the side of the hill; and the poles were laid across with smaller sticks, and then thatched with rice-straw. At the hole which was left to go in and out by the ladder, I had placed a kind of trap-door, which, if it had been attempted on the outside, would have fallen down and made a great noise. As to weapons, I took them all into the cave every night.

But I needed none of all this precaution; for never man had a more faithful, loving, sincere servant than Friday was to me. His affections were tied to me like those of a child to a father; and I dare say he would have sacrificed his life for saving mine.



## CHAPTER XI

I teach Friday to help me in my work— He learns to talk English and tells me of his nation, and of their wars and religion and of some white men who dwelt with his people— We make another boat and fit it with a mast and sails.

I WAS greatly delighted with my new companion, and made it my business to teach him everything that was proper to make him useful, handy, and helpful; but especially to make him speak English. He was the aptest scholar that ever was; and was so merry, so constantly diligent, and so pleased when he could understand me, or make me understand him, that it was very pleasant to talk to him.

After I had been two or three days returned to my castle, I took him out with me one morning to the woods. I went, intending to kill a kid out of my flock, and bring it home and dress it; but as I was going, I saw a she-goat lying down in the shade, and two young kids by her. I caught hold of Friday, and made signs to him not to stir. Immediately I shot and killed one of the kids. Poor Friday, who had, at a distance, indeed, seen me kill the savage, his enemy, but did not know, nor could imagine, how it was done, trembled, and shook, and looked so amazed that I thought he would have sunk down. He did not see the kid I shot at, or perceive I had killed it, but ripped up his waistcoat to feel whether he was wounded; and he came and kneeled down to me, and, embracing my knees, said a great many things I did not understand; but I could easily see the meaning was to pray me not to kill him.

I soon found a way to convince him that I would do him no harm; and taking him by the hand, laughed at him, and pointing to the kid which I had killed, beckoned him to run and



fetch it, which he did : and while he was wondering, and looking to see how the creature was killed, I loaded my gun. By and by I saw a great fowl, like a hawk, on a tree within shot. So, to let Friday understand a little what I would do, I called him to me, pointed at the fowl, and to my gun, and to the ground under the bird. I made him understand that I would shoot and kill that bird. Accordingly, I fired, and he saw the bird fall. He stood like one frightened again, notwithstanding all I had said to him ; and I found he was the more amazed, because he did not see me put anything into the gun, but thought there must be some wonderful fund of death and destruction in that thing, able to kill man, beast, or bird, whether near or far. The astonishment this created in him was such as could not wear off for a long time ; and I believe, if I had let him, he would have worshipped me and my gun. As for the gun itself, he would not so much as touch it for several days after ; but he would speak to it and talk to it, when he was by himself ; which, as I afterwards learned of him, was to desire it not to kill him. I brought home the kid, and the same evening I took the skin off, and stewed a portion of the flesh, and made some broth. I gave some to my man, who seemed very glad of it, and liked it very well ; but that which was strangest to him was to see me eat salt with it. He made a sign to me that the salt was not good to eat ; and putting a little into his mouth, he seemed to nauseate it and would spit and sputter at it, washing his mouth with fresh water after it. On the other hand, I took some meat into my mouth without salt, and I pretended to spit and sputter for want of salt, as fast as he had done at the salt ; but he would never care for salt with his meat, or in his broth.

The next day I roasted a piece of the kid by hanging it before the fire on a string, as I had seen people do in England, setting two poles up, one on each side of the fire, and one across on the top, and tying the string to the cross stick, letting the



meat turn continually. Friday admired this very much ; and when he came to taste the flesh, he took many ways to tell me how well he liked it.

Afterward I set him to work beating some corn out, and sifting it ; and he soon understood how to do this as well as I, especially after he knew that it was to make bread of. I let him see me make my bread, and bake it, too : and in a little time Friday was able to do all this for me, as well as I could do it myself.

I began now to consider that having two mouths to feed instead of one, I must provide more ground for my harvest, and plant a greater quantity of corn. So I marked out a larger piece of land, and began the fence in the same manner as before, and Friday worked with me very willingly and hard.

This was the pleasantest year of all the life I led on the island. Friday began to understand the names of everything I had occasion to call for, and of every place I had to send him to, and he talked a great deal to me ; so that I had now some use for my tongue again, which, indeed, I had very little occasion for before. Besides the pleasure of talking with him, I had a singular satisfaction in the fellow himself. His simple, unfeigned honesty appeared to me more and more every day, and I began really to love the creature.

I had a mind once to try if he had any hankering inclination for his own country ; and having taught him English so well that he could answer almost any question, I asked him whether the nation that he belonged to never conquered in battle ; at which he smiled, and said, “ Yes, yes, we always fight the better ; ” and so we began the following discourse :

*Master.* — You always fight the better ; how came you to be taken prisoner then, Friday ?

*Friday.* — My nation beat much, for all that.

*Master.* — How beat ? If your nation beat, how came you to be taken ?



*Friday.* — They more many than my nation, in the place where me was. They take one, two, three, and me. My nation overbeat them in the yonder place, where me no was. There my nation take one, two, great thousand.

*Master.* — But why did not your side recover you from the hands of your enemies then?

*Friday.* — They run, with one, two, three, and me, and make us go in the canoe. My nation have no canoe that time.

*Master.* — Well, Friday, and what does your nation do with the men they take? Do they carry them away and eat them, as your enemies do?

*Friday.* — Yes, my nation eat mans too; eat all up.

*Master.* — Where do they carry them?

*Friday.* — Go to other place, where they think.

*Master.* — Do they come hither?

*Friday.* — Yes, they come hither; come other else place.

*Master.* — Have you been here with them?

*Friday.* — Yes, I been here (points to the northwest side of the island, which, it seems, was their side).

By this I understood that my man Friday had formerly been among the savages who used to come on shore on the farther part of the island, on the same man-eating occasions that he was brought for; and, some time after, when I took the courage to go with him to that side, he presently knew the place, and told me he was there once, when they ate twenty men, two women, and one child. He could not tell twenty in English, but he numbered them by laying so many stones in a row, and pointing to have me count them.

I asked him how far it was from our island to the shore, and whether the canoes were not often lost. He told me there was no danger, and that after a little way out to sea, there was a current, always one way in the morning, the other in the afternoon.

This I thought to be no more than the sets of the tide; but



I afterwards understood it was occasioned by the great draft and reflux of the mighty river Oroonoko, in the mouth of which river our island lay ; and the land which I perceived to the west and northwest was the great island Trinidad. I asked Friday a thousand questions about the country, the inhabitants, the sea, the coast, and what nations were near. He told me the names of the several nations of his sort of people, but could give no other name than Caribs ° ; whence I easily understood that these were the Caribbees, which our maps place on the part of America which reaches from the mouth of the river Oroonoko to Guiana, and onwards to St. Martha. He told me, that up a great way beyond the setting of the moon, there dwelt white, bearded men like me, and pointed to my great whiskers ; and that they had killed “ much mans ” ; by which I understood he meant the Spaniards, the story of whose cruelties in America had been spread over the whole country and were remembered by all the nations, from father to son.

I inquired how I might go from this island, and get among those white men. He told me I might go “ in two canoe.” I could not understand what he meant by two canoe, till at last, with great difficulty, I found he meant a large boat, as big as two canoes. This part of the discourse began to relish with me very well ; and made me entertain hopes I might find an opportunity to escape from the island, and that this poor savage might be a means to help me to do it.

During the long time that Friday had now been with me, I had tried to lay a foundation of religious knowledge in his mind ; particularly I asked him one time who made him ; and who made the sea, the ground we walked on, and the hills and woods. He told me it was “ old Benamuckee, that lived beyond all.” He could describe nothing of this great person, but that he was very old, much older, he said, than the sea or the land, than the moon or the stars. I asked him if the people who died in his country went away anywhere. He said they all went to Benamuckee.



Then I asked him whether those they ate up went thither too. He said, "Yes."

I began to instruct him in the knowledge of the true God. I told him of the manner of making our prayers to God, and his being able to hear us, even in heaven. He told me one day, that if our God could hear us, up beyond the sun, he must needs be a greater God than their Benamuckee, who lived but a little way off, and yet could not hear till they went up to the great mountains where he dwelt to speak to him. I asked him if ever he went thither to speak to him. He said none went thither but the old men, their clergy; and that they went to say Oh! (so he called saying prayers) and then came back and told what Benamuckee said.

I explained to him that the going of their old men up to the mountains to say Oh! to their god Benamuckee was a cheat; and their bringing word what he said was much more so; that if they met with any answer, or spoke with any one there, it must be with an evil spirit. Then I entered into a long discourse with him about the devil, his rebellion against God, his enmity to man, his setting himself up in the dark parts of the world to be worshipped instead of God, and the many stratagems he made use of to delude mankind to ruin.

I found it was not so easy to imprint right notions in his mind about the devil as it was about God. I had been telling him how the devil was God's enemy in the hearts of men, and used all his malice and skill to defeat the good designs of Providence, and the like.

"Well," says Friday, "but you say God is so great; is he not much stronger than the devil?"

"Yes, yes, Friday," says I; "God is stronger than the devil."

"But," says he, "if God much stronger, much mightier than the devil, why does God not kill the devil, so that he may no more do wicked?"

I was strangely surprised at this question; and, after all,



though I was now an old man, yet I was ill qualified for a solver of difficulties. At first I could not tell what to say; so I pretended not to hear him; but he was earnest for an answer and he repeated the very same broken words. By this time I had recovered myself a little, and I said, "God will at last punish him severely."

This did not satisfy Friday; and he responded: "Me no understand. Why not kill the devil now?"

"You may as well ask me," said I, "why God does not kill you and me, when we do wicked things that offend him. We are preserved to repent and be pardoned."

He mused awhile on this: "Well, well," says he, mighty affectionately, "that good: so you, I, devil, all wicked, all preserve, repent, God pardon all."

Here I was run down by him to the last degree: and it was a testimony to me, how the mere notions of nature, though they will guide reasonable creatures to the knowledge of a God, and of a worship or homage due to the Supreme Being, yet nothing but Divine revelation can form the knowledge of Jesus Christ, and of redemption purchased for us.

I therefore diverted the present discourse between me and my man, rising up hastily as upon a sudden occasion of going out. Then sending him for something a good way off, I seriously prayed to God that He would enable me to instruct savingly this poor savage.

After Friday and I became more intimate I acquainted him with my own story. I let him into the mystery of gunpowder and bullet, and taught him how to shoot. I gave him a knife, with which he was wonderfully delighted; and I made him a belt, with a frog hanging to it; and in the frog I gave him a hatchet.

I described to him the countries of Europe, particularly England, which I came from; how we lived, how we worshipped God, how we behaved to one another, and how we traded in ships to all parts of the world. I showed him the ruins of the



boat in which we attempted to reach shore where we were wrecked and which was now fallen to pieces. Upon seeing this boat, Friday stood musing a great while. At last says he, "Me see such boat come to place at my nation."

When I had questioned him, I understood him, that a boat, such as that, came on shore where he lived, driven thither by stress of weather. Friday described the boat to me well enough, and added with some warmth, "We saved the white mans from drown. The boat full of white mans."

I asked him how many. He told upon his fingers seventeen. I asked him then what became of them. He replied, "They live at my nation."

This put new thoughts into my head; for I presently imagined that these might be the men belonging to the ship that was cast away in the sight of my island; and who, after the ship struck on the rock and they saw her inevitably lost, had saved themselves in their boat, and had landed on that wild shore among the savages. I inquired of Friday more critically what was become of them. He assured me that the savages left them alone, and gave them victuals to live on. I asked him how it came to pass that they did not kill them and eat them.

He said, "No, they make brother with them;" and then he added, "They no eat mans but when make the war fight;" that is to say, they never eat any men but such as come to fight with them, and are taken in battle.

It was after this some considerable time, that being on the top of the hill, at the east side of the island, Friday looked very earnestly toward the mainland, and, in a kind of surprise, falls a-jumping and dancing, and calls out, "Oh, joy! oh, glad! there see my country, there my nation!"

I observed an extraordinary sense of pleasure appeared in his face and his eyes sparkled, and his countenance showed a strange eagerness, as if he had a mind to be in his own country again. This observation of mine made me at first not so easy about my



new man Friday as I was before. I made no doubt that, if he could get back to his own nation, he would not only forget all his religion, but all his obligation to me, and would give his countrymen an account of me, and come back, perhaps, with a hundred or two of them, and make a feast upon me, at which he might be as merry as he used to be eating his enemies, when they were taken in war.

But I wronged the poor honest creature, for which I was very sorry afterwards. However, as my jealousy increased, and held me some weeks, I was a little more circumspect, and not so familiar and kind to him as before; and you may be sure I was every day pumping him, to see if I could discover any of the new thoughts which I suspected were in him.

One day, I called to him, and said, "Friday, do not you wish yourself in your own country, your own nation?"

"Yes," he said, "I be much oh glad to be at my own nation."

"What would you do there?" said I; "would you turn wild again, eat men's flesh, and be a savage, as you were before?"

He looked full of concern, and shaking his head, said, "No, no; Friday tell them to live good; tell them to pray God; tell them to eat corn-bread, cattle-flesh, milk; no eat man again."

"Why, then," said I to him, "they will kill you."

He looked grave at that, and said, "No, no; they no kill me, they willing learn."

Then I asked him if he would go back to them. He smiled at that, and replied he could not swim so far. I told him, I would make a canoe for him. He said he would go if I would go with him.

"I go!" says I; "why, they will eat me if I go there."

"No, no," says he, "me make them no eat you; me make them much love you." He meant, he would tell them how I had killed his enemies, and saved his life, and so he would make them love me.



From this time, I was eager to venture over, and see if I could possibly join those bearded men. After some days, I took Friday to my frigate, which lay on the other side of the island, and having cleared it of water, for I always kept it sunk, I showed it to him, and we both went into it.

I found he was a most dexterous fellow at managing it and made it go almost as swift and fast again as I could. So, I said to him, "Well, now, Friday, shall we go to your nation?"

He looked very dull at my saying so; because he thought the boat too small to go so far. I then told him I had a bigger; so the next day I went to the place where the first boat lay which I had made, but which I could not get into the water. As I had taken no care of it, and it had lain over twenty years there, the sun had split and dried it, and it was rotten. Friday told me a boat of that size would do very well, and would carry "much enough vittle, drink, bread."

I was by this time so fixed on my design of going over with him to the continent, that I told him we would make one as big as that, and he should go home in it. He answered not one word, but looked very grave and sad. I asked him what was the matter with him.

He said: "Why you angry mad with Friday? What me done? Why send Friday home away to my nation?"

"Did not you say you wished you were there?" says I.

"Yes, yes," says he, "wish we both there; no wish Friday there, no master there."

"I go there, Friday?" says I; "what shall I do there?"

He turned very quick upon me at this. "You do great deal much good," says he; "you teach wild mans be good, sober, tame mans; you tell them know God, pray God, and live new life."

"Alas, Friday!" says I, "thou knowest not what thou sayest; I am but an ignorant man myself. You shall go without me. Leave me here to live by myself, as I did before."



He looked confused again at that ; and running to one of his hatchets, he takes it up, and gives it to me.

“What must I do with this?” says I to him.

“You take kill Friday,” says he.

“What must I kill you for?” said I.

He replied : “What you send Friday away for? Take kill Friday ; no send Friday away.”

This he spoke very earnestly and I saw tears stand in his eyes. In a word, I so plainly discovered the utmost affection in him for me, that I told him then, and often after, that I would never send him away from me, if he was willing to stay with me. All the foundation of his desire to go to his own country was laid in his ardent affection for the people, and his hopes of my doing them good ; a thing which I had not the least thought, or intention, or desire of undertaking. But still I found a strong inclination to attempt an escape, and therefore I went to work with Friday to find a great tree proper to fell, and make a large canoe, to undertake the voyage. There were trees enough in the island to have built a fleet of good large vessels ; but the main thing I looked at was, to get one near the water.

At last, Friday found a tree ; for he knew much better than I what kind of wood was fittest, and we cut it down. Friday was for burning the hollow out, to make a boat, but I showed him how to cut it out with tools ; which he did very handily ; and in about a month’s hard labor, we finished it and made it very handsome. After this, it cost us nearly a fortnight’s time to get her along, inch by inch, on great rollers into the water. When she was in, she would have carried twenty men with ease.

Though she was so big, it amazed me to see with what dexterity my man Friday could manage her, turn her, and paddle her along. So I asked him if we might venture over in her. “Yes,” he said ; “we go over in her very well, though great blow wind.”



However, I had a farther design he knew nothing of, and that was to make a mast and a sail, and to fit her with an anchor and cable. As to a mast, I pitched upon a straight young cedar tree, and I set Friday to work to cut it down, and gave him directions how to shape it. As to the sail, I had pieces of old sails, enough ; but as I had had them now six-and-twenty years, I did not doubt but they were all rotten ; and, indeed, most of them were. However, I found two pieces, which appeared pretty good, and with a great deal of pains, and awkward, tedious stitching, I at length made a three-cornered ugly shoulder-of-mutton sail, to go with a boom at bottom, and a little short sprit at the top.

I was nearly two months rigging and fitting my mast and sails ; for I finished them very complete, making a small stay, and a foresail, to assist if we should turn to windward ; and I fixed a rudder to the stern.

After all this was done, I had my man Friday to teach as to what belonged to the navigation of my boat ; for, though he knew very well how to paddle, he knew nothing of what belonged to a sail and a rudder ; and was amazed when he saw me work the boat by the rudder, and how the sail jibbed, and filled this way or that way, as the course we sailed changed. However, with a little practice, I made all these things familiar to him, and he became an expert sailor, except that as to the compass I could make him understand very little. But, as there was not much cloudy weather, and seldom or never any fogs in those parts, there was the less occasion for the compass ; the stars were always to be seen by night, and the shore by day, except in the rainy seasons, and then nobody cared to stir abroad either by land or sea.



## CHAPTER XII

Three more canoes come to the island — I discover a white man among the prisoners brought by the savages — We attack the cannibals and release the white man, who proves to be a Spaniard, and another prisoner whom Friday finds is his old father — Sixteen of the Spaniard's countrymen being on the mainland, whither they had escaped from a wreck four years previous, he goes after them accompanied by Friday's father.

I WAS now entered on the seven-and-twentieth year of my captivity in this place; though the three last years ought rather to be left out of the account, for I had Friday with me, and my life was quite of another kind than in all the rest of my time. I kept the anniversary of my landing with the same thankfulness to God for his mercies as usual. I had an impression that my deliverance was at hand, and that I should not be another year on the island. However, I went on with my husbandry; digging, planting, and fencing, as before. I gathered and cured my grapes, and did every necessary thing.

The rainy season was in the meantime upon me, when I kept more within doors than at other times. We had stowed our new vessel as secure as we could, bringing her into the creek, and hauling her up to the shore. I had made my man Friday dig a little dock, just big enough to hold her, and just deep enough to give her water to float in at high tide; and then, when the tide was ebbcd, we made a strong dam across the end of the dock to keep the water out. So she lay dry as to the sea; and to keep the rain off, we covered her with a great many boughs of trees, so thick that she was as well thatched as a house. Thus we waited for the months of November and December, in which I designed to make my venture.

When the settled season began, I prepared for the voyage. And the first thing I did was to lay by a certain quantity of



provisions, and I intended, in a week or a fortnight's time, to open the dock, and launch our boat. One morning I called to Friday, and bid him go to the seashore, and try to find a turtle, a thing which we generally got once a week, for the sake of the eggs, as well as the flesh. Friday had not been gone long when he came running back, and flew over my outer wall, like one that felt not the steps he set his feet on; and before I had time to speak to him, he cries out to me: "Oh, master! Oh, master! Oh, sorrow! Oh, bad!"

"What's the matter, Friday?" said I.

"Oh! yonder, there," says he; "one, two, three canoe!"

"Well, Friday," says I, "do not be frightened."

However, the poor fellow was most terribly scared, for nothing ran in his head but that the savages were come back to look for him, and would cut him in pieces and eat him; and the poor fellow trembled so that I scarcely knew what to do with him. I comforted him as well as I could, and told him I was in as much danger as he. "Friday, we must resolve to fight them," said I. "Can you fight?"

"Me shoot," says he; "but there come many great number."

"No matter for that," said I, "our guns will fright them that we do not kill."

So I asked him whether, if I resolved to defend him, he would defend me, and do just as I bid him.

He said, "Me die, when you bid die, master." So I made him take two fowling-pieces, and load them with large swan-shot. Then I took four muskets, and loaded them with two slugs and five small bullets each; and my two pistols I loaded with a brace of bullets each. I hung my sword, as usual, naked by my side, and gave Friday his hatchet.

When I had thus prepared myself, I took my perspective-glass, and went up to the top of the hill, and found there were one-and-twenty savages, three prisoners, and three canoes;



and that their whole business seemed to be the triumphant banquet on the three captives. I observed also that they landed, not where they had when Friday made his escape, but nearer to my creek, where the shore was low, and where a thick wood came almost down to the sea. The abhorrence of the inhuman errand these wretches came about, filled me with such indignation that I went down to Friday, and told him I was resolved to go and kill them all.

I gave Friday one pistol to stick in his girdle, and three guns upon his shoulders, and I took one pistol and the other three guns myself; and then we marched out. I had a small bottle of rum in my pocket, and gave Friday a large bag with more powder and bullets; and I charged him to keep close behind me, and not to stir, or shoot, or do anything till I bid him, and in the meantime not to speak a word. In this posture I turned to my right hand nearly a mile, to get over the creek and into the wood, so that I might approach within shot of the savages before I should be discovered.

I entered the wood, and with all possible wariness and silence, Friday following close at my heels, I marched till I came to the skirt of the wood on the side which was next to them. Here I called softly to Friday, and showing him a great tree, which was just at the edge of the wood, I bade him go to the tree, and bring me word what they were doing. He went, and then came immediately back, and told me they were all about their fire eating the flesh of one of their prisoners, and that another lay bound on the sand a little from them, whom they would kill next; who was not one of their nation but one of the bearded men that came to his country in a boat. I was filled with horror; and going to the tree, I saw plainly a white man on the beach with his hands and feet tied.

There was another tree, and a little thicket beyond it, about fifty yards nearer to the savages than the place where I was. By going a little way about, I saw I might reach this tree



undiscovered, and that then I should be within half a shot of them. So going back about twenty paces, I got behind some bushes, which held all the way to the other tree, and then came to a little rising ground, which gave me a full view of the savages at the distance of about eighty yards.

I had now not a moment to lose, for nineteen of the dreadful wretches sat upon the ground, all close huddled together, and had just sent the other two to butcher the poor Christian, and bring him perhaps limb by limb to their fire. I turned to Friday. "Now, Friday," said I, "do as I bid thee, do exactly as you see me do; fail in nothing."

So I laid down one of the muskets and the fowling-piece on the ground, and Friday did the same, and with my other musket I took aim at the savages, bidding him do the like. I asked him if he was ready.

He said, "Yes."

"Then fire at them," said I; and we both fired at the same moment.

Friday took his aim so much better than I, that on the side he shot he killed two, and wounded three more; and on my side I killed one, and wounded two. The savages were, you may be sure, in a dreadful consternation; and all of them that were not hurt jumped to their feet, but were undecided which way to run, or which way to look, for they knew not whence the destruction came. Friday kept his eyes upon me that he might observe what I did. As soon as the first shot was made, I threw down the musket, and took up the fowling-piece, and Friday did the like. He saw me cock and present, and he did the same.

"Are you ready, Friday?" said I.

"Yes," says he.

"Let fly, then," said I, "in the name of God!" and with that I fired again among the amazed wretches, and so did Friday; and as our pieces were now loaded with swanshot,



only two savages dropped, but the others ran about yelling and screaming like mad creatures, most of them miserably wounded ; whereof three more fell quickly after, though not quite dead.

“Now, Friday,” said I, laying down the discharged pieces, and taking up the musket which was yet loaded, “follow me,” and I rushed out of the wood.

As soon as I perceived the Indians saw me, I shouted and bade Friday do so too, and running as fast as I could, I made directly toward the poor victim, who was lying on the beach. The two butchers had left him at the surprise of our first fire, and fled in a terrible fright to the seaside, and had jumped into a canoe, and three more of the rest ran the same way. I turned to Friday, and bade him step forward and fire at them. He understood me, and running about forty yards to be nearer, he shot ; and I saw them all fall in a heap in the boat, though two of them were up again quickly.

While my man Friday fired at them, I pulled out my knife and cut the flags that bound the poor victim ; and loosing his hands and feet, I lifted him up, and asked him, in the Portuguese tongue, what he was.

He answered, in Latin, “Christianus” ; but was so weak and faint that he could scarce stand or speak.

I took my bottle out of my pocket, and gave it to him, making signs that he should drink, which he did ; and I gave him a piece of bread, which he ate. Then I asked him what nationality he was, and he said, “Espagnole,” and being a little recovered, let me know, by signs, how much he was in my debt for his deliverance.

“Seignior,” said I, with as much Spanish as I could make up, “we will talk afterward, but we must fight now. If you have any strength left, take this pistol and sword, and help us.”

He took them thankfully ; and no sooner had he the arms in his hands, but, as if they had put new vigor into him, he



flew upon his murderers like a fury, and had cut two of them in pieces in an instant ; for the truth is, as the whole was a surprise to them, the poor creatures were so much frightened with the noise of our guns that they fell down for mere amazement and fear, and some had no more power to attempt their own escape than their flesh had to resist our shot.

I kept my musket in my hand still without firing. I called to Friday, and bade him run up to the tree whence we first fired, and fetch the arms which lay there that had been discharged, which he did with great swiftness ; and then giving him my musket, I sat down to load all the rest. While I was loading these pieces, there happened a fierce engagement between the Spaniard and a savage who made at him with one of their great wooden swords. The Spaniard was as bold and brave as could be imagined, though weak, and he fought this Indian, and cut two great wounds on his head ; but the savage, being a stout lusty fellow, closing with him, threw him down, and was wringing my sword out of his hand ; when the Spaniard, though undermost, drew the pistol from his girdle, shot the savage through the body, and killed him, before I, who was running to help, could come near.

Friday, being now left at liberty, pursued the flying wretches, with no weapon in his hand but his hatchet ; and with that he dispatched all he could come up with : and the Spaniard took one of the fowling-pieces, and with it he pursued two of the savages, and wounded them both ; but, as he was not able to run, they both got from him into the wood, where Friday followed them, and killed one of them. The other was too nimble for him ; and though he was wounded, yet plunged into the sea, and swam with all his might off to those two who were in the canoe, and they were all that escaped our hands of one-and-twenty.

Those that were in the canoe worked hard to get out of gunshot, and though Friday made two or three shots at them, I



did not find that he hit any of them. Friday would have had me take one of their canoes, and pursue them ; and, indeed, I was very anxious about their escape, lest, carrying the news home to their people, they should come back, perhaps with two or three hundred of the canoes, and overcome us by mere multitude. So I consented, and running to a canoe I jumped in, and bade Friday follow me ; but when I was in the canoe, I was surprised to find another poor creature lying there, bound hand and foot, and almost dead with fear, not knowing what was the matter ; for he had not been able to look up over the side of the boat, and he had been tied so long that he had really little life in him.

I immediately cut the twisted flags or rushes which bound him, and would have helped him up, but he could not stand or speak, and groaned most piteously, believing that he was only unbound in order to be killed. I pulled out my bottle and gave the poor wretch a dram, which revived him, and he sat up in the boat. But when Friday came to look in his face, it would have moved any one to tears to have seen how Friday kissed him, embraced him, hugged him, cried, laughed, shouted, jumped about, danced, sang ; then cried again, wrung his hands, beat his own face and head ; and then sang and jumped about again like a distracted creature. It was a good while before I could make Friday speak to me, or tell me what was the matter ; but when he came a little to himself, he told me that this was his father.

It is not easy for me to express how it touched me to see the ecstasy of the poor savage at the sight of his father, nor, indeed, can I describe half the extravagances of his affection. He went into the boat, and out of the boat, a great many times. When he went in, he would sit down and hold his father's head close to his bosom. Then he took his arms and ankles, which were numbed and stiff with the binding, and chafed and rubbed them with his hands.



This put an end to our pursuit of the savages in the canoe. They were now gotten almost out of sight; and it was happy for us that we did not follow them, for it blew so hard within two hours after and before they could be got a quarter of their way, and continued blowing so hard all night, and that from the northwest, which was against them, that I could not suppose their boat could live, or that they ever reached their own coast.

But to return to Friday. I gave him a cake of bread, and also two or three bunches of raisins, for his father. He had no sooner given his father these, but I saw him come out of the boat, and run away as if he had been bewitched, for he was the swiftest fellow that I ever saw. He was out of sight in an instant; and though I called, and hallooed after him, away he went; and in a quarter of an hour I saw him coming back, though not so fast as he went, because he had something in his hands.

When he came up to me, I found he had been quite home for an earthen pot, to bring his father some fresh water; and that he had got two more cakes of bread. The bread he gave me, but the water he carried to his father. However, as I was very thirsty too, I took a little sup of it. This water revived his father more than all the spirits I had given him, for he was just fainting with thirst.

I called to Friday to know if there was any water left. He said "Yes"; and I bade him give it to the poor Spaniard, who was in as much want of it as his father; and I sent one of the cakes, that Friday brought, to the Spaniard too, who was indeed very weak, and was reposing on a green place under the shade of a tree. His limbs were stiff, and much swelled with the rude bandage he had been tied with. When I saw that upon Friday's coming to him with the water he sat up and drank, and took the bread and began to eat, I went to him and gave him a handful of raisins. He looked up in my face



with all the tokens of gratitude and thankfulness that could appear in any countenance ; but, notwithstanding he had so exerted himself in the fight, he could not stand on his feet his ankles were so swelled and so painful to him. So I bade him sit still, and caused Friday to rub his ankles, and bathe them with rum.

I observed the poor affectionate creature every two minutes, or perhaps less, turned his head to see if his father was in the same place and posture as he left him. At last he noticed he was not to be seen ; at which he started up, and, without speaking a word, flew with that swiftness to the canoe one could scarce perceive his feet touch the ground. But he only found his father had laid himself down to ease his limbs. So Friday came back and I spoke to the Spaniard to let Friday help him up and lead him to the boat, and then he should go to our dwelling, where I would take care of him. But Friday lifted the Spaniard up on his back, and carried him, and set him down softly in the canoe close to his father, and launched the boat, and paddled it along the shore faster than I could walk. He brought them both safe into our creek, and, leaving them in the boat, ran to fetch the other canoe ; and he had that in the creek almost as soon as I got there by land. Then he wafted us over, and helped our new guests out of the boat ; but they were neither of them able to walk. So I went to work and soon made a kind of hand-barrow to lay them on, and Friday and I carried them up both together upon it between us.

But when we got them to the outside of our wall, or fortification, it was impossible to get them over. I set to work again, and Friday and I, in about two hours' time, made a very handsome tent, covered with old sails, in the space between our outward fence and the grove of young trees which I had planted. Here we made two beds of rice straw, with blankets laid upon it, to lie on, and another blanket to cover them on each bed.

My island was now peopled, and I thought myself very rich



in subjects ; and it was a merry reflection, which I frequently made, how like a king I was. First of all, the whole country was my own property. Secondly, my people were perfectly subjected. I was absolute lord and lawgiver. They all owed their lives to me, and were ready to lay down their lives, if there had been occasion, for me. It was remarkable, too, that my three subjects were of three different religions : my man Friday was a Protestant, his father was a Pagan and a cannibal, and the Spaniard was a Papist. However, I allowed liberty of conscience throughout my dominions.

As soon as I had secured my two rescued prisoners, and given them shelter, I ordered Friday to kill a yearling goat, out of my flock. Then I set him to boiling and stewing, and made a very good dish of flesh and broth, having put some barley and rice also into the broth ; and I carried it all into the new tent, and having placed a table there, I sat down, and ate my dinner with them, and, as well as I could, cheered and encouraged them. Friday was my interpreter, especially to his father, and, indeed, to the Spaniard too ; for the Spaniard spoke the language of the savages pretty well.

After we had supped, I ordered Friday to take one of the canoes and go and fetch our muskets and other firearms, which, for want of time, we had left at the place of battle. The next day, I had him go and bury the dead bodies of the savages, which lay open to the sun, and would presently be offensive. I also ordered him to bury the horrid remains of their barbarous feast ; all which he punctually performed, and defaced the very appearance of the savages having been there ; so that when I went again, I could scarce know where the place was, otherwise than by the trees near by.

In a little time I began to take my former thoughts of a voyage to the mainland into consideration ; being likewise assured by Friday's father that I might depend upon good usage from his nation, if I would go. But my thoughts were a little suspended



when I had a serious discourse with the Spaniard. There were sixteen more of his countrymen, who, having been cast away, lived at peace, indeed, with the savages, but were very sore put to it for necessaries. I asked him all the particulars of their voyage, and found they were in a Spanish ship, bound from the Rio de la Plata to Havana, that five of their men were drowned, when the ship was lost, and that the rest arrived, almost starved, on the cannibal coast, where they expected to be devoured. They had some arms with them, but these were perfectly useless, for they had no powder, the sea having spoiled all but a little, which they used, at their first landing, to provide themselves some food.

I asked him if they had formed no plan of making an escape. He said they had many consultations about it; but that having neither vessel, nor tools to build one, nor provisions of any kind, their councils always ended in tears and despair.

I asked him how he thought they would receive a proposal from me, which might tend toward an escape. I told him I feared mostly their treachery and ill-usage of me, if I put my life in their hands; for gratitude was no inherent virtue in the nature of man, nor did men always square their dealings by the obligations they had received so much as they did by the advantages they expected. I added that, otherwise, I was persuaded, if they were all here, we might, with so many hands, build a bark large enough to carry us all away, either to the Brazils southward, or to the islands or Spanish coast northward.

He answered, with a great deal of candor, that their condition was so miserable, and that they were so sensible of it, that he believed they would abhor the thought of using any man unkindly that should contribute to their deliverance; and that, if I pleased, he would go to them, with the old man, Friday's father, and discourse with them about it and return and bring me their answer: that he would make conditions with them



upon their solemn oath, that they should be absolutely under my direction, as their commander.

Upon these assurances, I resolved to venture to relieve them, if possible, and to send the old savage and this Spaniard over to them to treat. But when we had got all things in readiness for the voyage of these two, the Spaniard himself started an objection. He had been with us now about a month, during which time I had let him see in what manner I provided for my support; and he saw what stock of corn and rice I had, which would scarcely be sufficient for my family, now it was increased to four; but much less would it be sufficient if his countrymen should come over. Least of all would it be sufficient to victual our vessel, if we should build one, in which to go away. So he told me he thought it would be advisable to dig and cultivate more land, as much as I could spare seed to sow, and that we should wait another harvest, that we might have a supply of corn for his countrymen, when they should come.

His caution was so seasonable, and his advice so good, that I could not but be pleased with his proposal. So we fell to digging, as well as the wooden tools we were furnished with permitted; and in about a month it was seed-time, and we had as much land ready as we sowed two-and-twenty bushels of barley on, and sixteen jars of rice, which was all the seed we had to spare.

Having now society enough, and our number being sufficient to put us out of fear of the savages, if they had come, unless their number had been very great, we went freely all over the island, whenever we found occasion; and as we had our deliverance upon our thoughts, I marked several trees which I thought fit for our work, and I set Friday and his father to cutting them down; and caused the Spaniard to oversee and direct their work. I showed them with what indefatigable pains I had hewed a large tree into single planks, and I caused them



to do the like, till they had made about a dozen large planks of good oak, nearly two feet broad, thirty-five feet long, and from two inches to four inches thick. What prodigious labor it took, any one may imagine.

At the same time, I increased my little stock of tame goats as much as I could ; and for this purpose Friday and the Spaniard went out one day, and myself with Friday the next day, and we got about twenty young kids to breed up with the rest ; for whenever we shot the dam, we saved the kids and added them to our flock. But, above all, the season for curing the grapes coming on, I caused such a prodigious quantity to be hung up in the sun, that, I believe, they would have filled sixty or eighty barrels ; and these, with our bread, formed a great part of our food — very good living, too.

It was now harvest, and from twenty-two bushels of barley we brought in and thrashed out more than two hundred and twenty bushels ; and the like in proportion of the rice, which was store enough for our food to the next harvest, though all the sixteen Spaniards had been with me ; or, if we had been ready for a voyage, it would very plentifully have victualled our ship to have carried us to any part of America. When we had thus housed and secured our magazine of corn, we fell to work to make more great baskets in which to keep it ; and the Spaniard was very handy and dexterous at this.

Now I gave the Spaniard leave to go over to the mainland, strictly charging him not to bring any man back who would not first swear, in the presence of himself and the old savage, that he would no way injure the person he should find in the island, and would be entirely under his command ; and I ordered that this should be put in writing and signed with their hands. How they were to do such a thing when I knew they had neither pen nor ink — that, indeed, was a question which we never asked.

Under these instructions, the Spaniard and the old savage



went away in one of the canoes which they were brought in when they came as prisoners to be devoured by the savages. I gave each of them a musket, and about eight charges of powder and ball, and provisions of bread, and of dried grapes, sufficient for themselves for many days, and sufficient for all the Spaniards for about eight days' time ; and wishing them a good voyage, I saw them go, agreeing with them about a signal they should hang out at their return, by which I should know them at a distance when they came back.

They went away, with a fair gale, on the day the moon was at full in the month of October.

### CHAPTER XIII

I discover an English ship anchored near the island — A boat from the ship comes to the shore with eleven men in it, three of whom seem to be prisoners — The prisoners being left on the beach, while the rest go away inland, I go to the prisoners' assistance and learn that they are the captain and mate of the ship and a passenger — I likewise learn that the crew has mutinied — By strategy we capture all of the crew who had come to the island.

It was no less than eight days I had waited for the Spaniards, when a strange and unforeseen accident occurred. I was fast asleep in my hutch one morning, when my man Friday came running in to me, and called, " Master, master, they are come, they are come ! "

I jumped up, and went out as soon as I could get my clothes on, through my little grove, which was by this time grown to be a very thick wood. But I was surprised, when, turning my eyes to the sea, I saw a boat at about a league and a half distance, standing in for the shore, with a shoulder-of-mutton sail. Also I observed, presently, that it did not come from that side which the mainland lay on, but from the southernmost end of the island. Upon this I called Friday in, and bade



him lie close, for these were not the people we looked for, and we did not know yet whether they were friends or enemies.

In the next place, I went in to fetch my perspective-glass, to see what I could make of them; and, having taken the ladder out, I climbed up to the top of the hill, as I used to do when I was apprehensive of anything, and to get a plainer view without being discovered. I had scarce set my foot upon the hill, when my eyes discovered a ship lying at anchor, about two leagues and a half distant southeast. It appeared to be an English ship, and the boat appeared to be an English longboat.

The joy of seeing a ship, which I had reason to believe was manned by my own countrymen, was such as I cannot describe; but it occurred to me to consider what business an English ship could have here, since it was not the way to or from any part of the world where the English had any traffic; and I knew there had been no storms to drive it in hither. If the ship's people were really English, it was most probable that they were here upon no good design.

I had not kept myself long watching till I saw the boat draw near the shore, as if the crew looked for a creek to thrust it in at, for convenience of landing. However, as they did not come quite far enough, they did not see the little inlet where I formerly landed my rafts, but ran their boat upon the beach, about half a mile from me. There were in all eleven men, whereof three were unarmed, and, as I thought, bound; and when the first four or five were jumped on shore, they took those three out of the boat, as prisoners. One of the three I could perceive using the most passionate gestures of entreaty, affliction, and despair. The other two lifted up their hands sometimes and appeared concerned, but not to such a degree as the first.

I was perfectly confounded at the sight, and knew not what the meaning of it could be. Friday called out to me, "Oh, master! you see English mans eat prisoner as well as savage mans."



“Why, Friday,” says I, “do you think they are going to eat them, then?”

“Yes,” says Friday, “they will eat them.”

“No, no, Friday!” says I, “I am afraid they will murder them, indeed; but you may be sure they will not eat them.”

All this while I had no thought of what the matter really was, but stood trembling with the horror of the sight, expecting every moment the three prisoners would be killed. Once I saw one of the villains lift up a great cutlass to strike one of the poor men; at which all the blood in my body seemed to run chill in my veins.

I wished heartily now for my Spaniard, and the savage that was gone with him, or that I had some way to get undiscovered within shot of them, that I might rescue the three men. After their outrageous usage by the insolent seamen, the fellows ran scattering about the land, as if they wanted to see the country. I observed also that the three men had liberty to go where they pleased; but they sat down on the ground, very pensive, and looked like men in despair.

It was just at high water when these people came on shore; and while they rambled about to see what kind of a place they were in, they carelessly stayed till the tide was spent, and the water ebbed considerably away, so that their boat was aground. They had left two men in the boat, who, as I learned afterwards, having drunk a little too much brandy, fell asleep. One of them, waking and finding the boat fast aground, hallooed out for the rest, who were straggling about; upon which they all came to the boat; but it was past their strength to launch her, the boat being very heavy, and the shore on that side a soft oozy sand. In this condition, like true seamen, away they strolled about the country again; and I heard one of them calling, “Why, let her alone; she’ll float next tide.”

All this while I kept myself close, not once daring to stir out of my castle, any farther than to my place of observation



near the top of the hill; and very glad I was to think how well the place was fortified. I knew it would be no less than ten hours before the boat could float again, and by that time it would be dark, and I might be at liberty to get nearer these intruders and hear their discourse, if they had any. In the meantime, I fitted myself up for a battle.

It was my design not to venture forth till dark; but about two o'clock, being the heat of the day, I found the fellows were all gone straggling into the woods. The three poor distressed men had, however, sat down under the shelter of a great tree, at about a quarter of a mile from me. Upon this I resolved to discover myself to them, and learn something of their condition. I ordered Friday, whom I had made an excellent marksman with his gun, to load himself with arms. I took myself two fowling-pieces, and I gave him three muskets. My figure, indeed, was very fierce. I had my goatskin coat on, with the great cap I had mentioned, a naked sword, two pistols in my belt, and a gun upon each shoulder. Immediately I marched, with my man Friday at a good distance behind me, as formidable for his arms as I, but not quite so spectre-like. I came as near the men undiscovered as I could, and then, before any of them saw me, I called to them.

They started up at the noise, but were ten times more confounded when they saw me, and the uncouth figure that I made. I thought I perceived them just going to fly and I said: "Gentlemen, do not be surprised at me. Perhaps you may have a friend near, when you did not expect it."

"He must be sent directly from heaven, then," said one of them, very gravely, pulling off his hat at the same time.

"All help is from heaven, sir," said I; "but you seem to be in some great distress. I saw you when you landed."

The poor man, trembling and astonished, replied: "Am I talking to God or man? Is it a man or an angel?"

"If God had sent an angel to relieve you," said I, "the angel



would have come better clothed, and armed after another manner. Pray lay aside your fears. I am an Englishman and disposed to assist you. I have one servant only ; but we have arms and ammunition. Tell us freely, can we serve you ? ”

“ Sir,” said he, pointing across the water, “ I was commander of that ship. My men have mutinied against me. They have been hardly prevailed on not to murder me, and have set me on shore in this desolate place, with these two men — one my mate, the other a passenger, and we expected to perish, believing the place to be uninhabited.”

“ Where are these brutes, your enemies ? ” said I ; “ do you know where they are gone ? ”

“ There they lie, sir,” said he, pointing to a thicket of trees. “ My heart trembles for fear they have seen us and heard you speak. If they have, they will certainly murder us all.”

“ Have they any firearms ? ” said I.

He answered, “ They had only two pieces, one of which is in the boat.”

“ Well, then,” said I, “ leave the rest to me. I see they are asleep. It is an easy thing to kill them all ; but shall we rather take them prisoners ? ”

He told me there were two desperate villains among them that it was scarce safe to show any mercy to ; but if they were secured, he believed all the rest would return to their duty. I asked him which the villains were. He told me he could not at that distance distinguish them, but he would obey my orders in anything I would direct.

“ Well,” says I, “ let us retreat out of their view or hearing, lest they awake, and we will resolve further.”

So we went back till the woods covered us. “ Look you, sir,” said I ; “ if I venture upon your deliverance, are you willing to make two conditions with me ? ”

He anticipated my proposals by telling me that both he and the ship, if recovered, should be wholly directed and commanded



by me in everything; and if the ship was not recovered, he would live and die with me in what part of the world soever I should send him; and the two other men said the same.

“Well,” said I, “my conditions are: first — that while you stay on this island with me, you will do no prejudice to me or mine and be governed by my orders; secondly — that if the ship is recovered, you will carry me and my man to England passage free.”

He gave me all the assurance the invention of man could devise that he would comply with these demands.

“Well, then,” said I, “here are three muskets for you, with powder and ball. Tell me next what you think is proper to be done.”

He offered to be wholly guided by me. I told him the best method I could think of was to fire on the men at once as they lay.

He said, very modestly, that he was loath to kill them if he could help it. Seeing him cautious of shedding blood, I told him he and his companions should go themselves, and manage as they found convenient.

In the middle of this discourse we heard some of the men awake, and soon afterward we saw two of them on their feet. I asked him if either of them were the men who were the heads of the mutiny?

He said, “No.”

“Then you may let them escape,” said I; “and Providence seems to have awakened them on purpose to save themselves. If the rest escape you, it is your fault.”

He took the musket I had given him in his hand, and a pistol in his belt, and went off, followed by his two comrades, each with a gun in his hand. The two men made some noise, at which one of the seamen, who was awake, turned about, and seeing them coming, cried out to the rest; but it was too late then, for the moment he cried out the two men fired. They



had so well aimed their shot that one of the seamen was killed on the spot, and another very much wounded started up on his feet, and called eagerly for help ; but the captain, stepping to him, told him it was too late to cry for help. He should call upon God to forgive his villany, and with that word knocked him down with the stock of his musket, so that he never spoke more. There were three others in the company, and one of them was slightly wounded. By this time I was come ; and when they saw their danger, and that it was in vain to resist, they begged for mercy. The captain told them he would spare their lives if they would swear to be faithful to him in recovering the ship, and carrying her back to Jamaica, whence they came. They gave him all the protestations of their sincerity that could be desired ; and he was willing to believe them, and spare their lives, which I was not against, only I obliged him to have them bound hand and foot.

While this was doing, I sent Friday with the captain's mate to the boat, with orders to secure her, and bring away the oars and sails, which they did ; and by and by three straggling men, that were parted from the rest, came back upon hearing the guns fired ; and seeing the captain, who before was their prisoner, now their conqueror, they submitted to be bound also ; and so our victory was complete.

It now remained that the captain and I should inquire into one another's circumstances. I told him my whole history, which he heard with amazement — and when he reflected how I seemed to have been preserved there on purpose to save his life, the tears ran down his face, and he could not speak a word.

After this communication was at an end, I carried him and his two men into my apartments, where I refreshed them with such provisions as I had, and showed them the contrivances I had made during my long, long inhabiting that place. Above all, the captain admired my fortification and how perfectly I had concealed my retreat.



I told him this was my castle and my residence, but that I had a country seat as most princes have, whither I could retire upon occasion, and I would show him that another time. At present our business was to consider how to recover the ship. He told me he was perfectly at a loss what measures to take, for there were still six-and-twenty hands on board, who, having entered into a conspiracy, by which they had all forfeited their lives to the law, would be hardened now by desperation, knowing that if they were subdued, they would be brought to the gallows as soon as they came to England, or to any of the English colonies. Therefore, there would be no attacking them with so small a number as we were.

I mused for some time upon what he said, and found it was a very rational conclusion, and that something must be resolved on very speedily, to draw the men on board into some snare for their surprise. It presently occurred to me that in a little while the ship's crew, wondering what was become of their comrades, would row to shore in their other boat to look for them, and that, perhaps, they might come armed, and be too strong for us.

I told him the first thing we had to do was to stave the boat, which lay upon the beach, so they might not carry her off, and that we must take everything out of her, and leave her useless. Accordingly we went to the boat, took the arms which were left, and whatever else we found, — which was a bottle of brandy, and another of rum, a few biscuit-cakes, a horn of powder, and a great lump of sugar in a piece of canvas ; all which was very welcome to me, especially the sugar, of which I had had none for many years. When we had carried all these things on shore (the oars, mast, sail, and rudder were carried away before), we knocked a great hole in the bottom of the boat. It was not much in my thoughts that we would be able to recover the ship ; but my view was, that if the mutineers sailed without the boat, I did not question to make her fit to carry us away.



While we were thus preparing our designs, and had anchored the boat so that the tide would not float her off, we heard the ship fire a gun as a signal for the boat to return ; but no boat stirred, and they fired several times. At last when all their firing proved fruitless, we saw them, by the help of my glass, hoist another boat out, and row toward the shore ; and we found, as they approached, that there were no less than ten men in her, and that they had firearms with them.

As the ship lay almost two leagues from the shore, we had a full view of them as they came, and a plain sight even of their faces ; because the tide, having set them a little to the east of the other boat, they rowed up under shore to come to the same place where the other had landed. The captain knew the characters of all the men in the boat, of whom, he said, there were three very honest fellows, who, he was sure, were led into this conspiracy by the rest, being overpowered and frightened. As for the boatswain, who it seems was the chief officer among them, and all the others, they were as outrageous as any of the ship's crew, and terribly apprehensive was he that they would be too powerful for us.

I smiled at him. "For my part," said I, "there seems to be but one thing amiss."

"What is that?" says he.

"Why," said I, "it is that there are three or four honest fellows among them, who should be spared. Had they been all of the wicked part of the crew, I should have thought God's providence had singled them out to deliver them into your hands ; for, depend upon it, every man that comes ashore shall die or live as he behaves to us."

As I spoke this with a raised voice and cheerful countenance, I found it greatly encouraged him. We had, upon the first appearance of the boat coming from the ship, secured our prisoners effectually. Two of them, of whom the captain was less assured than ordinary, I sent with Friday to my cave, where



they were out of danger of being heard or discovered, or of finding their way out of the woods, if they could have delivered themselves. He left them bound, but promised, if they continued there quietly, to give them their liberty in a day or two ; but that if they attempted their escape, they should be put to death without mercy. They promised faithfully to bear their confinement with patience, and were very thankful that they had such good usage as to have a light left them ; for Friday gave them candles (such as we made ourselves) for their comfort ; and they did not know but that he stood sentinel over them at the entrance.

The other prisoners had better usage. Two of them were kept pinioned, indeed, because the captain was not free to trust them ; but the other two were taken into my service, upon the captain's recommendation, and upon their solemnly engaging to live and die with us. So with them and the three honest men we were seven ; and I made no doubt we should be able to deal well enough with the ten that were coming, considering that the captain had said there were three or four honest men among them also.

As soon as they got to the place where the other boat lay, they came on shore, hauling their boat up after them, which I was glad to see, for I was afraid they would have left the boat at anchor some distance from the shore, with men in her to guard her, and so we should not be able to seize the boat.

Being on shore, the first thing they did, they ran all to the other boat ; and it was easy to see they were greatly surprised to find her stripped of all that was in her, and a great hole in her bottom. After they had mused awhile upon this, they set up two or three shouts to try if they could make their companions hear ; but all to no purpose. Then they fired a volley of their small-arms, and the echoes made the woods ring ; but the men in the cave could not hear ; and those in our keeping, though they heard well enough, yet durst give no answer. The



newcomers were so astonished now that, as they told us afterwards, they resolved to go to their ship and let the rest know that the men who first landed were all murdered, and the long boat staved. Accordingly, they launched their boat and gat all of them into it.

The captain was terribly confounded at this, believing they would go on board and set sail, and so he would lose the ship, which he was in hopes we should recover ; but he was quickly as much frightened the other way. They had not been long put off with the boat, when we perceived them all coming on shore again. After consulting together they left three men in the boat, and the rest went into the country to look for their fellows.

Now we were at a loss what to do, as our seizing the seven men on shore would be no advantage to us if we let those in the boat escape ; because they would row away to the ship, and then with the rest would be sure to set sail.

The three who remained in the boat put her off to a good distance from the shore, and came to anchor to wait. Those that were on shore kept close together, marching toward the top of the little hill under which my habitation lay. When they were come to the brow of the hill where they could see a great way into the valleys and woods toward the northeast part, where the land lay the lowest, they shouted and hallooed till they were weary ; and not caring, it seems, to venture far from the shore, nor far from one another, they sat down together under a tree to consider. Had they thought fit to have gone to sleep there, they had done the job for us ; but they were too full of apprehensions of danger to venture to go to sleep, though they could not tell what the danger was they had to fear.

The captain made a very just proposal to me, that perhaps they would fire a volley again, to endeavor to make their fellows hear, and that we should sally upon them just at the juncture when their guns were all discharged, and they would certainly



yield, and we should have them without bloodshed. I liked this proposal, provided they fired while we were near enough to come up to them before they could load again. But this event did not happen, and we lay still a long time, and were very uneasy. At length we saw them all march down toward the sea.

When I perceived this, I imagined that they had given up their search, but I presently thought of a stratagem to fetch them back. I ordered Friday and the captain's mate to go over the little creek westward, and as soon as they came to a rising ground, about half a mile distant, I bade them halloo as loud as they could, and wait till they found the seamen heard them ; that when the seamen answered they should shout again ; and then keeping out of sight, take a round, always answering when the others hallooed, to draw them as far into the island as possible, and then wheel about to me by such ways as I directed.

The seamen were just going into the boat when Friday and the mate hallooed ; and, after answering, they ran along the shore until they were presently stopped by the creek. The water being up, they called for the boat to come and set them over ; as, indeed, I expected.

When they were over, I observed that the boat being gone up a good way into the creek, they took one of the three men out of her to go along with them and left the boat fastened to the stump of a little tree on the shore. This was what I wished for ; and crossing the creek we surprised the two men ; one of them lying on the shore and the other in the boat. The fellow on shore was between sleeping and waking, but he started up, and the captain, who was foremost, knocked him down ; and then called out to him in the boat to yield, or he was a dead man.

There needed very few arguments to persuade a single man to yield, when he saw five men upon him, and his comrade



knocked down. Besides, this man was one of the three who were not so hearty in the mutiny as the rest of the crew ; and, therefore, was easily persuaded not only to yield, but to join with us.

In the meantime, Friday and the captain's mate so well managed their business with the rest, that they drew them, by hallooing and answering, from one hill to another, and from one wood to another, till they not only tired them, but left them where they could not get back to the boat before it was dark.

It was several hours after Friday returned to me before we saw anything more of the seamen, and we could hear the foremost of them, as they approached, calling to those behind to come along ; and could also hear those answer, and complain how lame and tired they were, and not able to come any faster, which was very welcome news to us.

It is impossible to express their confusion when they found the boat fast aground in the creek, the tide ebbed out, and their two men gone. We could hear them call to one another in a most lamentable manner, declaring they were got into an enchanted island ; that either there were inhabitants in it, and they would all be murdered, or else there were devils and spirits in it, and they would be all carried away and devoured.

They hallooed again, and called their two comrades by their names a great many times ; but got no answer. After a while, we could see them, by the little light there was, run about, wringing their hands like men in despair, and sometimes they would go and sit down in the boat to rest themselves ; then come ashore and walk about, and so the same thing over again.

My men would fain have had me give them leave to fall upon them at once ; but I resolved to wait, to see if they did not separate ; and to make sure of them, I drew my ambuscade nearer. Then I ordered Friday and the captain to creep on their hands and knees, as close as they could. They had not



been long gone, when the boatswain, who was the ringleader of the mutiny, came walking toward them, with two more of the crew. The captain was so eager at having the principal rogue so much in his power, that he and Friday, starting up on their feet, let fly at them. The boatswain was killed on the spot; the next man was shot in the body, and fell, though he did not die till an hour or two after; and the third ran.

At the noise of the firing, I immediately advanced with my whole army, which was now eight men; Friday, the captain and his two men, and the three prisoners of war, whom we had trusted with arms. In the dark the mutineers could not see our number; and I ordered the man they had left in the boat, who was now one of us, to call them by name, and bring them to a parley. So he calls out as loud as he could to one of them, "Tom Smith! Tom Smith!"

Tom Smith answered immediately, "Who's that? Robinson?" for he knew the voice.

The other answered, "Ay, ay; for God's sake, Tom Smith, throw down your arms and yield, or you are all dead men this moment."

"Who must we yield to? Where are they?" says Smith.

"Here they are," says Robinson. "Here's our captain and fifty men with him. They have been hunting you these two hours; the boatswain is killed, Will Frye is wounded, and I am a prisoner; and if you do not yield, you are all lost."

"Will they give us quarter?" says Tom Smith.

"I'll go and ask if you promise to yield," says Robinson.

So he asked the captain; and the captain then calls out, "You, Smith, know my voice; if you all lay down your arms immediately, and submit, you shall have your lives, all but Will Atkins."

Upon this Will Atkins cried out: "For God's sake, captain, give me quarter. What have I done? They have all been as bad as I," — which, by the way, was not true; for this Will



Atkins was the first man that laid hold of the captain, when they first mutinied, tying his hands, and giving him injurious language.

However, the captain told him he must lay down his arms, and trust to the mercy of the governor — by which he meant me, for they all called me governor. In a word, they all laid down their arms, and I sent the man that had parleyed with them, and two more, who bound them; and then my great army of fifty men, which were but eight, came and seized them and their boat; only that I kept myself out of sight.

The captain, now he had leisure, expostulated with them upon the villany of their practices, and how certainly it must bring them to misery and distress, and perhaps to the gallows.

They all appeared very penitent, and begged hard for their lives. As for that, he told them they were none of his prisoners, that they thought they had set him on shore in a barren, uninhabited island; but it had pleased God so to direct them, that it was inhabited, and that the governor was an Englishman; that he might hang them all if he pleased; but as he had given them quarter, he would probably send them to England, to be dealt with, except Atkins, who would be hanged in the morning.

Though this was a fiction of his own, it had its desired effect. Atkins fell upon his knees to beseech the captain to intercede with the governor for his life; and all the rest begged that they might not be sent to England.



## CHAPTER XIV

Of the measures we took to regain possession of the ship — I accept the offer of the captain to take me back to England, and I leave my island after having been there more than eight and twenty years — I reach England and find that nearly all my relatives and old friends are dead — I visit Lisbon and discover that the Portuguese captain who carried me to the Brazils is still alive — From him I learn that my plantation in the Brazils has largely increased in value — He assists me to sell it and I return to England.

It now occurred to me that it would be a most easy thing to bring these fellows to help heartily in getting possession of the ship. So I retired in the dark from them, that they might not see what kind of a governor they had, and called the captain to me. When I called, one of the men was ordered to say, "Captain, the commander calls for you;" and presently he replied, "Tell his Excellency I am just coming."

This more perfectly bewildered the prisoners, and they all believed that the commander was just by, with his fifty men. Upon the captain's coming to me, I told him my project for seizing the ship, and we resolved to put it in execution next morning. But, in order to execute it with greater certainty of success, I told him we must send Atkins and two more of the worst of them to the cave where the others lay. So Friday and the two men who came on shore with the captain conveyed the three prisoners to the cave.

The others I ordered to my bower; and as it was fenced in, and they pinioned, they were secure enough. To these in the morning I sent the captain, who was to parley with them and tell me whether he thought they might be trusted to go on board and surprise the ship. He talked to them of the injury done him, of the condition they were brought to, and that though the governor had given them quarter for their lives as to the present action, yet if they were sent to England,



they would be all hanged in chains ; but if they would join in an attempt to recover the ship, he would get the governor's engagement for their pardon.

Any one may guess how readily such a proposal would be accepted. They fell down on their knees to the captain, and promised, with the deepest imprecations, that they would be faithful to him.

“ Well,” says the captain, “ I must go and tell the governor what you say, and see what I can do to induce him to consent to it.”

So he brought me an account of the temper he found them in, and said he believed they would be faithful. However, that we might be very secure, I told him he should go back again and choose out five and tell them that he would take out those five to be his assistants, and that the governor would keep the other two and the three that were sent prisoners to the castle (my cave) as hostages for the fidelity of those five ; and that if they proved unfaithful, the five hostages should be hanged.

This convinced them that the governor was in earnest. They had no way left but to accept the situation ; and it was now the business of the prisoners, as much as of the captain, to persuade the other five to do their duty.

Our strength for the expedition therefore consisted of the captain, his mate, and passenger, and nine of the crew to whom, upon the captain's motion, I now gave arms.

I asked the captain if he was willing to venture with these hands on board the ship. As for me and my man Friday, I did not think it was proper for us to go with him, having seven prisoners left behind ; and it was employment enough for us to keep them secure and supply them with victuals.

The captain expressed his eagerness to attempt the capture of his vessel, and he had only to wait until he could furnish his two boats, stop the breach of one, and man them. He made his passenger captain of one, with four men. Himself, his



mate, and five more went in the other. They contrived their business very well, for they came to the ship about midnight. As soon as they were within call, he had Robinson hail the ship, and tell the mutineers they had brought off the men and the boat, but that it was a long time before they had found them, and the like; holding them in a chat till they came to the ship's side. Then the captain and the mate, entering with their arms, immediately knocked down the second mate and carpenter with the butt-end of their muskets. Being very faithfully seconded by their men, they secured all the rest that were on the main and quarter decks, and began to fasten the hatches to keep those down that were below. The men from the other boat, entering at the fore-chains, secured the fore-castle of the ship, and the scuttle which went down into the cook-room, making three men they found there prisoners.

When this was done, and all safe on deck, the captain ordered the mate, with three men, to break into the round-house, where the rebel captain lay, who, having taken the alarm, had got up. With him were two men and a boy, and they had firearms in their hands. When the mate, with a crow, split open the door, the new captain and his men fired boldly, and wounded the mate with a musket-ball, which broke his arm, and wounded two more men, but killed nobody.

The mate, calling for help, rushed into the round-house, wounded as he was, and with his pistol shot the new captain through the head, so that he never spoke a word more. The rest yielded, and the ship was taken without any other lives lost.

As soon as the ship was thus secured, the captain ordered seven guns to be fired, which was the signal agreed upon to give me notice of his success. You may be sure I was very glad, having sat watching upon the shore till nearly two o'clock in the morning.

Now I laid me down; and it having been a day of great



fatigue to me, I slept very sound till I heard a man calling me by the name of "Governor ! Governor !" and presently I knew the captain's voice.

I climbed to the top of the hill, where he embraced me in his arms, and, pointing to the ship, said, "My dear friend and deliverer, there's your ship ; for she is yours, and so are we, and all that belongs to her."

I cast my eyes to the ship, and there she rode, within little more than half a mile of the shore ; for they had weighed anchor as soon as they were masters of her, and the weather being fair, had brought her opposite the mouth of the little creek ; and the captain had come in the pinnace to near the place where I landed my rafts, just at my door.

When we had talked a while, the captain told me he had brought me some refreshments, such as the ship afforded, and such as the wretches that had been his masters had not plundered him of. Upon this, he called to the men in the boat, and bade them bring the things ashore that were for the governor ; and these were as many and generous as if I had been planning to dwell on the island still, and they were to go without me. There were six large bottles of Madeira wine, two pounds of excellent tobacco, twelve good pieces of the ship's beef, and six pieces of pork, with a bag of peas, and about a hundredweight of biscuit. He also brought me a box of sugar, a box of flour, a bag full of lemons, and two bottles of lime-juice, and abundance of other things. But beside these, and what was a thousand times more useful, he brought me six new clean shirts, six very good neck-cloths, two pairs of gloves, one pair of shoes, a hat, and a pair of stockings, and a good suit of clothes of his own, which had been worn very little. In a word, he clothed me from head to foot. It was a very agreeable present, to one in my circumstances ; but never was anything in the world so unpleasant, awkward, and uneasy as it was to me to wear such clothes at their first putting on.



After all his good things were in my apartment, we began to consult what was to be done with the prisoners we had ; for it was worth considering whether we might venture to take them away with us or no, especially two of them, whom he knew to be incorrigible and refractory to the last degree ; and the captain said they were such rogues that if he did carry them away, it must be in irons, as malefactors, to be delivered over to justice at the first English colony he could come at.

Upon this, I told him that, if he desired it, I would undertake to bring the two men he spoke of to make it their own request that he should leave them on the island. " I would be very glad of that," says the captain.

" Well," says I, " I will send for them, and talk with them."

So I caused Friday and the two hostages who were now discharged, their comrades having performed their promise, to go to the cave, and bring the five men, pinioned as they were, to the bower and keep them there till I came.

After some time, I went thither dressed in my new clothes ; and I was called governor. Being all met, and the captain with me, I told the men I had got a full account of their villainous behavior to the captain, and how they had run away with the ship, and were preparing to commit further robberies, but that Providence had ensnared them in their own ways, and that they were fallen into the pit which they had dug for others.

I let them know that by my direction the ship had been seized ; and their new captain had received the reward of his villany, for they might see him hanging at the yard-arm. As to them, I wanted to know what they had to say why I should not execute them as pirates.

One of them answered that when they were taken, the captain promised them their lives, and they humbly implored my mercy. But I told them I knew not what mercy to show them ; for I had resolved to quit the island with all my men, and had taken passage with the captain to go to England. As



for the captain, he could not carry them to England other than as prisoners in irons, to be tried for mutiny; the consequence of which would be the gallows; so that I could not tell what was best for them, unless they had a mind to take their fate in the island.

They said they would much rather venture to stay there than be carried to England to be hanged. I accordingly set them at liberty, and told them I would leave them some fire-arms, some ammunition, and directions how they could live very well if they thought fit.

Upon this I prepared to leave the island; but told the captain I would stay for a little while to get my things ready, and desired him to go on board the ship in the meantime, and keep all right there, and have the boat come to shore later for me.

When the captain was gone, I sent for the men whom we were to leave behind, and entered seriously into discourse with them of their circumstances. I told them the whole history of the place, showed them my fortifications, the way I made my bread, planted my corn, and cured my grapes. I told them the story also of the seventeen Spaniards, that were to be expected, for whom I left a letter, and made them promise to treat them in common with themselves.

I left them five muskets, three fowling-pieces, and three swords, and a barrel and a half of powder. I described the way I managed the goats, and explained how to milk and fatten them, and to make both butter and cheese. In a word, I related every part of my story; and told the men I should prevail with the captain to leave them two barrels of gunpowder more, and some garden-seeds. Also, I gave them the bag of peas which the captain had brought me to eat, and bade them be sure to sow the peas and increase them.

Having done all this, I went on board the ship. We prepared to sail, but did not start that night. The next morning early, two of the five men came swimming to the ship's side.



They made the most lamentable complaint of the other three, and begged the captain to take them on board, though he hanged them immediately.

The captain pretended to have no power without me; but after consulting, and after their solemn promises of amendment, they were taken on board, and they proved very honest and quiet fellows.

Some time after this, I went with the boat on shore, the tide being up, with the things promised to the men; to which the captain, at my intercession, caused their chests and clothes to be added.

When I took leave of the island, I carried on board, for relics, the great goatskin cap I had made, my umbrella, and one of my parrots. Also I took the money which had lain by me so long useless, and thus I left the island, the 19th of December, in the year 1686, after I had been upon it eight-and-twenty years, two months, and nineteen days.

After a long voyage, I arrived in England the 11th of June, in the year 1687, having been thirty-five years absent. When I came to England I was almost as perfect a stranger as if I had never been known there. My benefactor and faithful steward, with whom I had left my money in trust, was alive, but had had great misfortunes; was become a widow the second time, and very low in the world. I made her easy as to what she owed me, assuring her I would give her no trouble; but, on the contrary, in gratitude for her former care and faithfulness, I relieved her as much as my little means would afford.

I went afterwards to Yorkshire; but my father was dead, and my mother and all the family extinct, except that I found two sisters and two of the children of one of my brothers; and as I had been long ago given over for dead, there had been no provision made for me; so that I found nothing to relieve or assist me.

I met with one piece of gratitude, indeed, which I did not expect; and this was, that the master of the ship, whom I had



so happily delivered, having given a very handsome account to the owners of the manner how I had saved the ship, they invited me to meet them and some other merchants concerned, and all together made me a very handsome compliment upon the subject and a present of almost £200 sterling.

Now I resolved to go to Lisbon, and see if I might obtain some information of the state of my plantation in the Brazils, and of what was become of my partner, who, I had reason to suppose, thought I was dead. With this view I took shipping for Lisbon, where I arrived in April following ; my man Friday accompanying me, and proving a most faithful servant upon all occasions.

I found, by inquiry, my old friend, the captain of the ship who first took me up at sea off the shore of Africa. He was now grown old, and had left the sea, having put his son into his ship, which was still in the Brazil trade. The old man did not know me ; but I soon brought myself to his remembrance, and asked after my plantation and my partner. The old man told me he had not been in the Brazils for about nine years ; but that he could assure me, that when he came away my partner was living ; but several of the trustees I had joined with him were dead ; that, however, he believed I would have a very good account of the improvement of the plantation. But it had long been considered certain that I was wrecked and drowned, and if I was again to have my plantation I would have to prove my claim. This the old man said he would help me to do, and as there were ships in the river of Lisbon just ready to go away to Brazil, he made me enter my name in a public register, with his affidavit, affirming, upon oath, that I was alive, and that I was the same person who took up the land for the said plantation. This being regularly attested by a notary, and a procuracy affixed, he directed me to send it, with a letter of his writing, and then proposed my staying with him till I received a reply.



Never was anything more honorable than the proceedings upon this procuration; for in less than seven months I received a large packet from the survivors of my trustees, the merchants, for whose account I went to sea, in which it was shown there was my due the sum of five thousand two hundred and eighty-seven moidores.<sup>o</sup>

There was also a letter of my partner's, congratulating me very affectionately upon my being alive, giving me an account how the estate was improved, and what it produced a year; the number of acres that it contained, how planted, and how many slaves there were upon it. He invited me very passionately to come over and take possession of my own; and to give him orders to whom he should deliver my effects if I did not come myself. By the same fleet, my merchant-trustees shipped me one thousand two hundred chests of sugar, eight hundred rolls of tobacco, and the rest of the whole account in gold.

It is impossible to express the flutterings of my heart when I looked over these letters, and especially when I found all my wealth about me; for, as the Brazil ships come in fleets, the same ships which brought my letters brought my goods, and the effects were safe in the river before the letters came to my hand. I was now master, all on a sudden, of five thousand pounds sterling in money, and had an estate in the Brazils that gave me an income of more than a thousand pounds a year.

I had now to consider which way to steer my course next, and what to do with the estate that Providence had thus put into my hands. Indeed, I had more cares now than I had in my silent state of life in the island, where I wanted nothing but what I had, and had nothing but what I wanted; whereas I had now a great charge upon me, and my business was how to secure it. I had not a cave now to hide my money in, where it might lie without lock or key, till it grew mouldy and tarnished before anybody would meddle with it. I knew not where to



put it, and on the whole it seemed best I should go back to England and take my effects with me. So I set out, going by way of Madrid and Paris, and then across from Calais to Dover, where I landed safe the 14th of January.

When I came to London, my principal counsellor was my good ancient widow, who thought no pains too much, nor care too great, to employ for me; and I trusted her so entirely with everything, that I was perfectly easy as to the security of my effects; and, indeed, I was very happy from beginning to end in the unspotted integrity of this good gentlewoman.

I now resolved to dispose of my plantation, and I wrote to my old friend at Lisbon, and he offered it to the survivors of my trustees, who lived in the Brazils. They accepted the offer, and I received bills of exchange for thirty-two thousand eight hundred pieces of eight for the estate.

## CHAPTER XV

I marry and stay in my native land for seven years — My wife dying, my wandering disposition again takes possession of me — My nephew, being commander of a ship about to make a voyage to the East Indies, proposes to take me with him — We seek out my island — Of the five mutineers left behind by the ship which carried me to England, and of the Spaniards who came to the island soon after I left.

THOUGH I had sold my estate in the Brazils, yet I had a strong inclination to see my island and to know if the poor Spaniards were in being there, and how the rogues I left had used them.

My true friend, the widow, earnestly dissuaded me from going, and so far prevailed that for almost seven years she prevented my running abroad, during which time I took my two nephews into my care. The eldest, having something of his



own, I bred up as a gentleman, and gave him some addition to his estate. The other I placed with the captain of a ship; and, after five years, finding him a sensible, bold, enterprising young fellow, I put him into a good ship, and sent him to sea.

In the meantime, I married, and that not either to my disadvantage or dissatisfaction, and had three children, two sons and one daughter.

But in the middle of all this felicity, one blow unhinged me; and drove me into the wandering disposition which, being born in my very blood, soon recovered its hold. This blow was the loss of my wife. When she was gone, the world looked awkward. I was as much a stranger in it as I was in the Brazils, when I first went on shore there; and as much alone, except for the assistance of servants, as I was in my island. I knew neither what to think nor what to do. I saw the world busy around me; one part laboring for bread, another part squandering in vile excesses or empty pleasures, equally miserable; for the men of pleasure every day surfeited of their vice, and heaped up work for sorrow and repentance; and the men of labor spent their strength in daily struggling for bread to maintain the vital strength they labored with; living but to work, and working but to live, as if daily bread were the only end of wearisome life, and a wearisome life the only occasion of daily bread.

It was now the beginning of the year 1693, when my nephew, whom I had brought up to the sea, and had made commander of a ship, was come home from a short voyage to Bilboa. He told me that some merchants of his acquaintance had been proposing to him to go a voyage for them to the East Indies, and to China. "Uncle," says he, "if you will go to sea with me, I will engage to land you upon your old island habitation; for we are to touch at the Brazils."

I paused a while at his words, and looked steadily at him. "What devil," said I, "sent you on this unlucky errand?"



But the scheme hit so exactly with my temper that I told him I would go with him ; though I would not promise to go any farther than my own island.

“ Sir,” says he, “ you don’t want to be left there, I hope ? ”

“ Why,” said I, “ can you not take me up on your return ? ”

He told me it would not be possible to do so ; that the merchants would never allow him to come that way with a laden ship of such value, it being a month’s sail out of his course. “ Besides, sir, if I should miscarry,” said he, “ and not return at all, then you would be reduced to the condition you were in before.”

This was very rational ; but we found a remedy, which was to carry a framed sloop on board the ship, in pieces, that might be set up in the island, and finished fit to go to sea in a few days.

My ancient good friend, the widow, earnestly struggled with me to consider my years, my easy circumstances, and the needless hazards of a long voyage ; and, above all, my young children. But it was all to no purpose. I told her I thought there was something so uncommon in the impressions I had upon my mind, that it would be resisting Providence if I should stay at home ; after which she ceased her expostulations, and joined with me, not only in making provision for my voyage, but also in settling my family affairs for my absence, and providing for the education of my children.

My nephew was ready to sail about the beginning of January, 1695 ; and I, with my man Friday, went on board, on the 8th ; having, besides that sloop, which I mentioned, a very considerable cargo of all kinds of necessary things for my colony.

Also, I carried with me some servants, whom I purposed to place there as inhabitants ; particularly I carried two carpenters, a smith, a tailor, and a very handy, ingenious fellow, who was a cooper by trade, and was also a general mechanic ; and whom we called our Jack-of-all-trades.



My cargo, as nearly as I can recollect, consisted of a quantity of linen, and English thin stuffs for clothing, and every necessary thing I could think of. I carried also a hundred muskets and fuses; some pistols, a considerable quantity of shot of all sizes, two brass cannon, powder, swords, cutlasses, and the iron part of some pikes and halberds; and I made my nephew carry two small quarter-deck guns more than he wanted for his ship, to leave behind if there was occasion; that we might build a fort, and man it against all sorts of enemies.

I had not such bad luck on this voyage as I had been used to meet with; and I came to my old habitation, the island, on the 10th of April, 1695. It was with no small difficulty that I found the place; for, having no chart for the coast, we beat about a great while, but at last, sailing from one island to another, I came fair on the south side of my island. So I brought the ship safe to an anchor, broadside with the little creek where my old habitation was.

As soon as I saw the place, I called for Friday, and asked him if he knew where he was. He looked about a little, and, clapping his hands, cried, "Oh, yes; oh, there — oh, yes; oh, there!" pointing, dancing, and capering like a mad fellow; and I had much ado to keep him from jumping into the sea to swim ashore.

"Well, Friday," says I, "do you think we shall find anybody here, and shall we see your father?"

When I named his father, the poor creature looked dejected, and the tears ran down his face very plentifully. "What is the matter, Friday?" said I; "are you troubled because you may see your father?"

"No, no," says he, shaking his head, "no see him more; no, never more see him again. He long ago die. He much old man."

"Well, well," says I, "Friday, you don't know."

The fellow had better eyes than I, and he points to the hill



just above my old house ; and, though we lay half a league off, he cries out, " Me see much man there ! "

As soon as Friday told me he saw people, I caused the English flag to be unfurled, and fired three guns, to give them notice we were friends. Then I ordered a boat out, and went directly on shore, taking Friday with me and also sixteen men well armed, because we might find new guests there whom we did not know.

As we went on shore upon tide of flood, near high water, we rowed directly into the creek ; and the first man I saw was the Spaniard whose life I had saved. I ordered nobody to go on shore at first except myself ; but there was no keeping Friday in the boat, for the affectionate creature had spied his father at a distance. He jumped out and flew away like an arrow from a bow. It would have made any man shed tears to have seen the first transports of his joy when he came to his father ; how he embraced him, kissed him, stroked his face, took him in his arms, and looked at him, for a quarter of an hour together.

One would have thought the fellow bewitched. But it would have made a dog laugh the next morning to see how he walked along the shore, back and forth with his father, several hours, always leading him by the hand, as if he had been a lady ; and every now and then he would go to the boat to fetch his father a lump of sugar, a biscuit cake, or something or other that was good. In the afternoon his frolics ran another way ; for then he set the old man down on the ground, and danced about him, and made a thousand antic gestures ; and all the while he did this he would be talking to him, and telling him of what had happened to him abroad. In short, if the same filial affection was to be found in Christians to their parents, in our part of the world, there would hardly be any need of the fifth commandment.

But to return to my landing. It would be endless to take notice of all the ceremonies and civilities that the Spaniards



received me with. The Spaniard, whose life I had saved, came toward the boat, attended by one more, and he had no notion of its being me that was come. "Seignior," said I, in Portuguese, "do you not know me?" At which he spoke not a word, but, giving his musket to the man that was with him, came forward and embraced me, telling me he was inexcusable not to know that face again which he had once seen as if I had been an angel from Heaven, sent to save his life. He said abundance of very handsome things, and then asked me if I would go to my old habitation. So I walked along with him; but I could no more find the spot than if I had never been there; for they had planted so many trees, and arranged them in such a manner, so thick and close to one another, and in ten years' time they were grown so big, that the place was inaccessible, except by such windings and blind ways as they only, who made them, could find.

I asked the reason for all these fortifications. He told me I would say there was need enough, when they had given me an account how they had passed their time since their arriving in the island. Nothing that ever befell him in his life, he said, was so surprising and afflicting to him as the disappointment he was under when he came back to the island and found I was not there.

As to the three barbarians (so he called them) that were left behind, the Spaniards all thought themselves much better among the savages, "and," says he, "had they been strong enough, we had been all long ago in purgatory," and with that he crossed himself on the breast.

The history of the Spaniards coming to, and conduct in, the island, after my going away, I shall try to relate, as nearly as I can gather the facts out of my memory, from what was related to me. When the Spaniard, with Friday's father, reached the mainland, whither he went to fetch over the other Spaniards, his countrymen, they were overjoyed to see him (it seems he



was the principal man among them), and when he told them the story of his deliverance, and in what manner he was furnished for carrying them away, it was like a dream to them, but he showed them the arms and provisions that he brought for their voyage, and they prepared to come with him.

Their first business was to get canoes ; and they were obliged to trespass upon the friendly savages, and to borrow two large canoes, on pretence of going out fishing.

In these they came away. They had no baggage, neither clothes, nor provisions, nor anything in the world but what they had on them, and a few roots to eat.

In the three weeks that passed before the expedition returned, unluckily for them I had the occasion offered to get off from the island, leaving three of the most impudent, hardened, ungovernable, disagreeable villains behind me that any man could meet with.

The only just thing the rogues did was that when the Spaniards came ashore they gave my letter to them, and provisions, and other relief, as I had ordered ; also the long paper of directions which I left, containing the particular methods in which I baked my bread, reared my tame goats, and planted my corn ; how I cured my grapes, made my pots, and everything I did. This they gave to the Spaniards, two of whom understood English. They agreed very well for some time and began to live sociably ; and the head Spaniard and Friday's father together managed all their affairs. As for the Englishmen, they did nothing but ramble about the island, shoot parrots, and catch tortoises ; and when they came home at night, the Spaniards provided their suppers for them.

The Spaniards would have been satisfied with this, had the others left them alone, which, however, they could not find in their hearts to do long ; but, like the dog in the manger, they themselves would not eat, neither would they let the others eat. The differences were at first trivial, but at last the rogues broke



out into open war with all the rudeness and insolence that can be imagined.

But before I come to the particulars of this part, I must supply a defect in my former relation ; and this was that, just as we were weighing the anchor to set sail, there happened a little quarrel on board of our ship, nor was it appeased till the captain, rousing up his courage, made two of the most refractory fellows prisoners ; and as they had been active in the former disorders, he threatened to carry them in irons to England, and have them hanged there.

This mutiny had brought us to an anchor for that night ; and next morning we found that our two men had stolen each of them a musket, and had taken the ship's pinnace, which was not yet hauled up, and run away with her to their companions in roguery on the island.

I ordered the long-boat on shore with twelve men and the mate, and away they went to seek the rogues ; but they could neither find them nor any of the rest, for they all fled into the woods when they saw the boat coming. The mate at length brought the pinnace away, and came on board without them.

These two men made the number on the island five ; but the other three villains were so much more wicked than the later arrivals, that after they had all been a few days together the three turned the newcomers out of doors to shift for themselves, and would have nothing to do with them ; nor could the three men, for a good while, be persuaded to give the other two any food.

When the Spaniards came, they would have had the three English brutes take in their countrymen again, but they would not hear of it. So the two poor fellows lived by themselves ; and finding nothing but industry and application would make them live comfortably, they settled on the north shore of the island, and built them two huts, one to lodge in, and the other to lay up their stores in ; and the Spaniards, having given them



some corn for seed, and some of the peas which I had left, they dug, planted, and enclosed, and began to live pretty well; and one of the fellows, being the cook's mate of the ship, was very ready at making soup, puddings, and other preparations.

They were going on in this manner, when the three unnatural rogues, their own countrymen, in mere humor, and to insult them, came and bullied them, and told them the island was theirs; that the governor had given them the possession of it; and nobody else had any right to it; and that they should build no houses upon the ground unless they would pay rent.

The two men, thinking they were jesting, asked them to come in and sit down, and see what a fine house they had built, and tell them what rent they demanded. One of the three, cursing and raging, told them they should see they were not in jest; and going a little distance, to where the honest men had made a fire, he took a firebrand, and clapped it to the outside of the hut, which would have been all burned down in a few minutes, if one of the two had not run to the fellow, thrust him away, and trod the fire out with his feet.

The fellow was in such a rage at the honest man's thrusting him away, that he returned upon him with a pole he had in his hand, and had not the man avoided the blow very nimbly, and run into the hut, he had ended his days at once. His comrade, seeing the danger they were both in, ran in after him, and immediately they came out with their muskets, and the man that was first struck at with the pole knocked down the fellow that began the quarrel, with the stock of his musket, and then, seeing the rest come at them they stood together, and presenting the other ends of their guns bade them stand off.

The assailants had firearms with them also; but one of the two honest men boldly commanded them to lay down their arms. They did not, indeed, lay down their arms, but seeing him so resolute it brought them to a parley, and they consented to take their wounded man and be gone. The three villains now studied



nothing but revenge, and committed such rogueries on the two honest men as treading down their corn; shooting three young kids and a she-goat, which the poor men had got to breed up tame for their food supply, and, in a word, plaguing them night and day. This forced the two men to such a desperation, that they resolved to fight all three, the first time they had a fair opportunity.

It happened one day that two of the Spaniards, being in the woods, saw one of the two Englishmen, whom I call the honest men, and he had made a sad complaint to the Spaniards of the barbarous usage they had met with from their three countrymen, and how they had ruined their plantation, and destroyed their corn, and killed the milch-goat and their three kids; and that if the Spaniards did not assist them again, they should be starved. When the Spaniards came home at night, and they were all at supper, one of them took the freedom to reprove the three Englishmen, though in very gentle and mannerly terms, and asked them how they could be so cruel.

One of the Englishmen replied very briskly that the two fellows came on shore without leave; and that they should not plant or build upon the island. It was none of their ground.

“Why,” says the Spaniard, very calmly, “Seignior Inglese, what must they do then?”

Another of the brutes responded, “Do? they should be servants, and work for us.”

“But how can you expect that of them?” says the Spaniard; “they are not bought with your money; you have no right to make them servants.”

The Englishman answered, “The island is ours; the governor gave it to us, and no man has anything to do here but ourselves”; and with that, swore that they would go and burn the honest men’s huts. They should build none upon their land.

“Why, seignior,” says the Spaniard, “by the same rule, we must be servants too.”



“Ay,” says the bold dog, “and so you shall, before we have done with you.”

The Spaniard only smiled at that, and made no answer. However, this little discourse had heated the Englishmen ; and starting up, one says to the other, “Come, let’s go and have t’other brush with those two fellows. We’ll demolish their castle, I’ll warrant you.”

Upon this, they went all trooping away, with every man a gun, a pistol, and a sword, and muttered some insolent things among themselves of what they would do to the Spaniards too. Whither they went, or how they bestowed their time that evening, the Spaniards did not know ; but it seems they wandered about the country part of the night, and then, lying down in the place which I used to call my bower, they overslept themselves ; for they had resolved to go on at midnight, and so surprise the two poor men when they were asleep, and set fire to their huts while they were in them, and either burn them there, or murder them as they came out.

However, the two men were up and gone abroad before the bloody-minded rogues came to their huts. When they found the men gone, Atkins, who was the forwardest man, called out to his nearest comrade, “Ha, Jack, here’s the nest, but the birds are flown.”

They mused a while to think what should be the occasion of the two men being gone out so soon, and suggested presently that the Spaniards had given them notice ; and with that they shook hands, and swore to one another that they would be revenged on the Spaniards. Then they fell to work with the poor men’s habitation ; pulled down both the houses, and left not the least stick standing, or scarce any sign on the ground where they stood. They tore all their household stuff in pieces, and threw everything about in such a manner, that the poor men afterwards found some of their things a mile from their habitation. Also they pulled up the young trees which the poor men had



planted ; destroyed the fences that secured their cattle and their corn ; and sacked and plundered everything as completely as a horde of Tartars would have done.

When the three came back to the old habitation again, flushed with the rage which the work they had been about had put them into, they told what they had done, and one of them, stepping up to one of the Spaniards, takes the Spaniard's hat off his head, and giving it a twirl, sneering in his face, says to him, "And you, Seignior Jack Spaniard, shall have the same sauce if you do not mend your manners."

The Spaniard, who, though quiet and civil, was as brave a man as could be, and, withal, a strong, well-made man, looked at him for a good while, and then, having no weapon in his hand, stepped gravely up to him, and, with one blow of his fist, knocked him down, at which another of the rogues fired his pistol at the Spaniard. The bullet touched the tip of the Spaniard's ear, and he bled pretty much. The blood made the Spaniard believe he was more hurt than he really was, and he stooped, and took the musket of the fellow he had knocked down, and was just going to shoot the man who had fired at him, when the rest of the Spaniards, calling to him not to shoot, secured the other two, and took their arms from them.

When they were thus disarmed, and found they had made all the Spaniards their enemies, they began to cool, and, giving the Spaniards better words, would have had their arms again ; but the Spaniards, considering the feud that was between them and the other two Englishmen, told them they would do them no harm ; but that they could not think of giving them their arms while they appeared so resolved to do mischief to their own countrymen, and had even threatened them all.

The rogues were now no more capable to hear reason than to act with reason ; but being refused their arms, they went raving away like madmen, threatening what they would do, though they had no firearms. But the Spaniards, despising their threatening,



told them they must take care how they offered any injury to the plantation or goats ; for if they did, they would shoot them as they would ravenous beasts, wherever they found them. However, this was far from calming them, and away they went, raging and swearing like furies. As soon as they were gone, the two honest men came, in passion and rage enough also, though of another kind ; for having been at their plantation, and finding it all demolished, they had provocation enough.

The Spaniards told them that they had disarmed the three rogues, and the Spaniard, who was the governor, said, “ We will endeavor to make them do you justice, for there is no doubt but they will come to us again, being not able to subsist without our assistance. We promise you to make no more peace with them without having a full satisfaction for you. Upon this condition, we hope you will agree to use no violence with them, other than in your own defence.”

The two Englishmen yielded to this very awkwardly, and with great reluctance ; and waited for the issue of the thing, living for some days with the Spaniards ; for their own habitation was destroyed.

In about five days' time the three vagrants, tired with wandering, and almost starved, having chiefly lived on turtles' eggs all that while, came back to the grove ; and finding the governor, and two more with him, walking by the side of the creek, they, in a very submissive, humble manner, begged to be received again into the family. The Spaniards used them civilly, but told them they had acted so unnaturally to their countrymen, and so very grossly to the Spaniards, that they could not come to any conclusion without consulting the two Englishmen and the rest ; but they would go to them and discourse about it.

After half an hour's consultation the three Englishmen were called in, and their two countrymen charged them with the ruin of all their labor and a design to murder them ; all which



they could not deny. The Spaniard governor acted the moderator between them, and as he had obliged the two Englishmen not to hurt the three while they were unarmed, so he now obliged the three to go and rebuild their fellows' two huts, one to be of the same and the other of larger dimensions than they were before; to fence the ground again where they had destroyed the fences, plant trees in the place of those pulled up, dig over the land again for planting corn where they had spoiled it, and, in a word, to restore everything to the same state as they found it, as nearly as they could.

They submitted to this; and, as they had plenty of provisions given them all the while, they grew very orderly, and the whole society began to live pleasantly and agreeably together, only that these three fellows could never be persuaded to work for themselves except now and then a little, just as they pleased. However, the Spaniards told them that if they would live sociably and friendly, they would be content to work for them, and let them walk about and be as idle as they pleased; and thus, having lived pretty well together for a month or two, the Spaniards gave them arms again.

It was not more than a week after they had these arms, before the ungrateful creatures began to be as insolent and troublesome as ever; but an accident happened presently which endangered the safety of the entire colony, and they were obliged to lay by all private resentments, and look to the preservation of their lives.



## CHAPTER XVI

Numerous savages visit the island and two hostile nations engage there in battle — The three worst Englishmen and the Spaniards come to blows and the Englishmen are turned out of the plantation — They establish homes on the other side of the island — They presently take one of the boats and go away, but return after two and twenty days — With them they bring eight savages, five of whom are women — The women become the wives of the five Englishmen.

IT happened one night that the Spanish governor found his thoughts tumultuous and could not get any sleep. He lay a great while, but, growing more and more uneasy, he resolved to rise.

When he was up he went out to the grove, where he was surprised with seeing a light as of fire, a very little way off, and hearing the voices of men — not of one or two, but of a great number.

He was soon assured that the voices were those of savages, and there was evidently a much larger party than usually resorted to the island. The governor ran back immediately and raised his fellows, giving them an account of the imminent danger they were all in, and they took the alarm; but it was impossible to persuade them to stay close within where they were. They must all run out to see how things stood.

While it was dark they were well enough, and they had opportunity for some hours to view the savages by the light of three fires they had made at a distance from one another. What they were doing the Spaniards knew not, and what to do themselves they knew not. For the enemy were too many; and were divided into several parties.

The Spaniards, as they found that the fellows ran straggling all over the shore, made no doubt but, first or last, some of them would see the token of inhabitants; and they were in great perplexity for fear their flock of goats should be destroyed.



So the first thing they resolved upon was to dispatch three men before it was light, to drive all the goats away to the great valley where the cave was, and, if need were, to drive them into the cave itself.

Could they see the savages all together in one body, and at a distance from their canoes, they resolved to attack them; but some of them were two miles from the others. After having mused a great while on the course they should take, they sent out the old savage, Friday's father, while it was still dark, as a spy, to learn, if possible, something concerning the intruders — what they came for, and what they intended to do. The old man dressed himself like the savages, and away he went. After he had been gone an hour or two, he brought word that he had been among them undiscovered; that he found they were two parties, and of two nations, which had war with one another, and had fought a great battle in their own country; and that both sides, having several prisoners taken in the fight, were, by mere chance, landed on the same island, for devouring their prisoners and making merry; but their coming so by chance to the same place had spoiled all their mirth — that they were in a great rage at one another, and were so near he believed they would fight again as soon as daylight began to appear. He had hardly made an end of telling his story, when the Spaniards could perceive, by the unusual noise, that the two little armies were engaged in a bloody fight.

Friday's father used all the arguments he could to persuade our people to stay close and not be seen. He told them that they had nothing to do but lie still, and the savages would finish fighting, and then those who were not killed would go away. But it was impossible to prevail upon the Englishmen. Their curiosity was so importunate that they must run out and see the battle. However, they did not go openly, but went into the woods, and placed themselves to advantage, where they might securely watch the fight and not be seen.



The battle was very fierce, and continued two hours before they could guess which party would be beaten; but then that party which was nearest our people's habitation began to appear weakest, and, after some time more, began to fly. This put our men again into a great consternation, lest any of those that fled should run into the grove before their dwelling for shelter, and thereby discover the place. Upon this, they resolved that they would stand armed within the wall, and whoever came into the grove, they would sally out over the wall, and kill them, so that, if possible, not one should return to give an account. They ordered also that it should be done with their swords, or by knocking them down with the stocks of their muskets, but not by shooting, for fear of raising an alarm by the noise.

As they expected, it fell out. Three of the routed army fled for life, and, crossing the creek, ran directly into the thick wood for shelter. The scout our men kept to look abroad gave notice of this, and said the conquerors had not pursued the three savages, or seen which way they were gone. Upon this, the Spaniard governor would not suffer them to kill the fugitives, but sending three men, ordered them to go round, come in behind them, and surprise and take them prisoners; which was done. The residue of the conquered people fled to their canoes, and got off to sea. The victors retired and made no pursuit, but, drawing together in a body, gave two great screaming shouts by way of triumph — and so the fight ended; and the same day, about three o'clock in the afternoon, they also marched to their canoes. Thus the Spaniards had the island again free to themselves, their fright was over, and they saw no more savages for several years.

After the combatants were all gone, the Spaniards came out of their den, and, viewing the field of battle, they found about two-and-thirty men dead on the spot. Some were killed with arrows, but most of them were killed with great wooden swords,



sixteen or seventeen of which they found on the field of battle. They saw not one man that was not stone dead ; for either the savages stay by a wounded enemy till they have killed him, or they carry all the wounded men away with them.

This deliverance tamed our Englishmen ; the sight had filled them with horror, and it appeared terrible to the last degree, especially upon supposing that some time or other they should fall into the hands of those creatures, who would not only kill them as enemies, but kill them for food, as we kill our cattle. For a great while after they were tractable, and went about the common business of the whole society.

Our people had taken three prisoners, and these three they made servants, and taught to work for them. It was now agreed to remove part of the goats to the valley where my cave was, and plant part of the corn there ; and so if the savages ever came up into the island and one part was destroyed, the other might be saved.

To protect their habitation they planted trees, or rather thrust in stakes, to fill up the rest of that whole space of ground from the trees I had set quite down to the side of the creek. These stakes being of a wood very forward to grow, in three or four years there was no piercing with the eye any considerable way into the plantation. They did the same by all the ground to the right hand and to the left, and round even to the side of the hill, leaving no way, not so much as for themselves to come out, except by the ladder placed up to the side of the hill, and then lifted up, and placed again from the first stage up to the top ; and when the ladder was taken down, nothing but what had wings or witchcraft to assist it could come at them.

They lived two years after this in perfect retirement, and had no more visits from the savages. But now they had another broil with the three Englishmen ; one of whom, a most turbulent fellow, being in a rage at one of the three slaves, because the fellow had not done something right which he bid



him do, drew a hatchet out of a belt, in which he wore it by his side, and fell upon the poor savage to kill him. One of the Spaniards, seeing him give the savage a barbarous cut with the hatchet, ran to him, and entreated him not to murder the poor man. The fellow, being enraged the more at this, struck at the Spaniard with his hatchet, which the Spaniard, perceiving, avoided the blow, and with a shovel he had in his hand (for they were all working in the field about their corn land) knocked the brute down. Another of the Englishmen, running at the same time to help his comrade, knocked the Spaniard down; and then two Spaniards more came to help their man, and the third Englishman fell in upon them. They had none of them any firearms or other weapons but hatchets and tools, except this third Englishman. He had one of my rusty cutlasses, with which he made at the two last Spaniards, and wounded them both. This fray set the whole family in an uproar, and, more Spaniards coming, they took the three Englishmen prisoners. The next question was, what should be done with them? They had been so often mutinous, and were so desperate they cared not what hurt they did to any man, so that it was not safe to live with them.

The two honest Englishmen, and the Spaniard who saved the poor savage, were of the opinion that they should hang one of the three, for an example to the rest, and that it should be he that had twice attempted to commit murder with his hatchet. Indeed, there was some reason to believe that he had done it, for the poor savage was in such a miserable condition with the wound he had received, that it was thought he could not live. But after a long debate, it was agreed that they should be disarmed, and not permitted to have either gun, powder, shot, sword, or any weapon; and should be turned out of the society, and left to live where they would, and how they could, by themselves; that they should be forbidden to come within a certain distance of the place where the rest dwelt; and if they



offered to spoil, burn, kill, or destroy any of the corn, plantings, buildings, fences, or cattle belonging to the society, they should die without mercy.

The governor considered a little ; and said : “ It will be long ere they can raise corn and cattle of their own, and they must not starve. We must therefore allow them provisions.”

So he caused to be added that they should have corn given them to last eight months, and for seed to sow, by which time they might be supposed to raise some of their own ; that they should have six milch-goats, four he-goats, and six kids given them, and that they should have tools for their work in the fields, but they should have none of these tools or provisions unless they would swear solemnly that they would not hurt or injure any of the Spaniards or their fellow-Englishmen.

Thus they were turned out to shift for themselves. They went away sullen and refractory, to go and choose a place where they would settle ; and some provisions were given them, but no weapons.

About four or five days after, they came for some victuals, and gave the governor an account where they had pitched their tents, and marked out a plantation. It was a very convenient place on the remotest part of the island, northeast near where I landed when I returned from being driven out to sea, in my attempt to sail round the island. Here they built themselves two huts, near the foot of a hill, having some trees growing already on three sides of them, so that by planting others the hut would be very easily covered from the sight. They desired some dried goatskins for beds, which were given them ; and upon pledging their words that they would not disturb the rest, or injure any of their plantations, the Spaniards gave them hatchets, and what other tools they could spare ; some peas, barley, and rice, for sowing, and anything they wanted, except arms and ammunition.

They lived in this separate condition about six months, and



had got in their first harvest ; but when the rainy season came on, for want of a cave in the earth, they could not keep their grain dry, and it was in great danger of spoiling. This humbled them much. So they came and begged the Spaniards to help them, which they very readily did ; and in four days worked a great hole in the side of the hill, big enough to secure their corn and other things from the rain ; but it was a poor place, at best, compared to mine, and especially as mine was then, for the Spaniards had greatly enlarged it, and made several new apartments in it.

About three-quarters of a year after this separation, a new frolic took these rogues, and they came to the Spaniards one morning, and desired to speak with them. The Spaniards very readily heard what they had to say, which was this : That they were tired of living in the manner they did, and that they were not handy enough to make the necessaries they wanted, and found they should be starved ; but if the Spaniards would give them leave to take one of the canoes which they came in, and arms and ammunition, they would go over to the mainland and seek their fortunes, and so deliver the rest from the trouble of supplying them with any more provisions.

The Spaniards were glad enough to get rid of them, but very honestly represented to them the certain destruction they were running into ; told them they would be starved or murdered, and bade them consider.

The men replied, audaciously, they should be starved if they stayed, for they could not work, and would not work, and insisted importunately upon their demand, declaring they would go, whether the Spaniards gave them any arms or not.

The Spaniards told them, with great kindness, that if they were resolved to go, they would let them have two muskets, a pistol, and a cutlass, and each man a hatchet, which they thought was sufficient for them. The offer was accepted ; and the Spaniards baked bread enough to serve them a month, and



gave them as much goats' flesh as they could eat while it was sweet, and a great basket of dried grapes, a pot of fresh water, and a young kid alive. Then the three men boldly set out in the canoe for a voyage over the sea, where it was at least forty miles broad.

The boat was a large one, and would have carried fifteen or twenty men, and therefore was rather too big for them to manage; but as they had a fair breeze, and the flood-tide with them, they did well enough. They had made a mast of a long pole, and a sail of four large goat-skins dried, which they had sewed or laced together; and away they went.

The Spaniards often said to one another, after this, how quietly and comfortably they lived, now these three turbulent fellows were gone. As for their coming again, that was the remotest thing from their thoughts that could be imagined; when, behold, after two-and-twenty days' absence, one of the two honest Englishmen who remained behind, being abroad at his planting work, sees three strange men coming toward him at a distance, with guns upon their shoulders.

Away runs the Englishman, frightened and amazed, to the governor Spaniard, and tells him they were all undone, for there were strangers upon the island, but could not tell who they were.

While they were debating, the three Englishmen came, and, standing without the wood, hallooed to them. They presently knew their voices, but what could be the matter, and what made them come back again?

It was not long before the men were brought in, and they gave a full account of their voyage. They reached the land in two days, or something less; but finding the people alarmed at their coming, and prepared with bows and arrows to fight them, they durst not go on shore, but sailed on to the northward six or seven hours, till they came to a great opening by which they perceived that the land was an island. Upon entering that opening of the sea, they saw another island, on



the right hand, north, and several more west ; and being resolved to land somewhere, they put over to one of the islands which lay west, and went boldly on shore. The people were very courteous and friendly, and gave them roots and dried fish ; and the women, as well as the men, were very forward to supply them with anything they could get for them to eat.

They continued there four days, and inquired, as well as they could by signs, what nations were this way, and that way, and were told of several fierce and terrible people. With some of these they had fought a battle about two moons ago, and their king had two hundred prisoners, which he had taken and was feeding to make them fat for a feast. The Englishmen seemed mighty desirous of seeing those prisoners ; but the savages, mistaking them, thought they were desirous to have some to carry away for their own eating. So they beckoned, pointing to the setting of the sun, and then to the rising ; which was to signify that the next morning at sun-rising they would bring some for them ; and, accordingly, the next morning they brought five women and eleven men, and gave them to the Englishmen, to carry with them on their voyage.

As brutish and barbarous as these fellows were at home, their stomachs turned at this sight, and they did not know what to do. To refuse the prisoners would have been the highest affront to the savage gentry ; and what to do with them they knew not. However, after some debate they resolved to accept of them ; and, in return, they gave the savages one of their hatchets, an old key, a knife, and six or seven bullets. Though the savages did not understand the use of the bullets, they seemed particularly pleased with them ; and now, having accepted these gifts, they tied the poor prisoners' hands behind them, and dragged them into the boat for our men.

The Englishmen were obliged to come away as soon as they had the captives, or else they that gave this noble present



would certainly have expected our men to kill two or three the next morning, and invite the donors to dinner.

Having taken their leave, with all the respect and thanks that could well pass between people, where, on either side, they understood not one word that was said, they put off with their boat, and came back toward the first island; where, when they arrived, they set eight of the men prisoners at liberty.

In their voyage they endeavored to have some communication with their prisoners; but it was impossible to make them understand anything. Nothing they could say to them, or give them, or do for them, but was looked upon as preparations to murder them. They first of all unbound them; but the poor creatures screamed at that, especially the women, as if they had just felt the knife at their throats; for they immediately concluded they were unbound on purpose to be killed. If our men gave them anything to eat, it was the same thing; for then the captives concluded it was for fear they should sink in flesh, and so not be fat enough to kill. If the Englishmen looked at one of them more particularly, the party presently concluded it was to see whether he or she was fattest and fittest to kill first; nay, after our men had brought them quite over, still they expected every day to make a dinner or supper for their new masters.

When the three wanderers had given this history of their voyage, the Spaniards asked them where their new family was; and being told that they had brought them on shore, and put them into one of their huts, and were come up to beg some victuals for them, the whole colony resolved to go to see them; and did so, and Friday's father with them.

They presently came into the hut and there the savages sat, all bound; for when the Englishmen had brought them on shore, they tied their hands that they might not take the boat and make their escape. Three were men, about thirty to thirty-five years of age; and five were women, whereof two



might be from thirty to forty ; two more not five and twenty ; and the fifth, a tall, comely maiden, about sixteen or seventeen. The women were well-favored, agreeable persons, and two of them, had they been perfectly white, would have passed for very handsome women even in London.

The first thing the Spaniards did was to cause the old Indian, Friday's father, to see if he knew any of them, and then if he understood their speech. The old man looked seriously at them, but knew none of them ; neither could any of them understand a word he said, or a sign he could make, except one of the women. However, this was enough to answer the end, which was to satisfy them that the men into whose hands they were fallen were Christians ; that they abhorred eating men or women ; and that they might be certain they would not be killed. As soon as they were assured of this they showed such a joy, and by such awkward gestures, as is hard to describe.

The woman who was their interpreter was bid, in the next place, to ask them if they were willing to be servants, and to work for the men who had brought them away to save their lives ; at which they all fell a-dancing ; and presently one took up this, and another that, to carry on their shoulders, to intimate they were willing to work.

The governor asked the three men what they intended to do with these women, whether they would be servants or wives to them. One of the Englishmen answered very boldly and readily, that they would be both ; to which the governor said, " You are your own masters as to that ; but I desire you will all engage, if any of you take any of these women, that he shall take but one ; and she shall be maintained by the man that takes her, and be his wife."

This appeared so just that every one agreed to it without any difficulty.

Then the Englishmen asked the Spaniards if they designed



to take any of them. But every one of them answered, "No." Some of them said they had wives in Spain, and the others did not like women that were not Christians. On the other hand, the five Englishmen took them every one a wife. But the wonder was, how five such refractory fellows should agree about these women, especially seeing two or three of the women were, without comparison, more agreeable than the others; but they took a good way to prevent quarrelling, for they set the five women by themselves, in one of their huts, and they went all into another hut, and drew lots who should choose first.

He that drew to choose first went away by himself to the hut where the poor creatures were, and fetched out her he chose; and it was worth observing, that he took her that was reckoned the homeliest and oldest of the five, which made mirth enough among the rest of the Englishmen, and even the Spaniards laughed; but the fellow considered better than any of them that it was application and business they were to expect assistance in, and she proved the best wife of all the parcel.

When the poor women saw themselves set in a row and the choosing began, the terrors of their condition returned upon them, and they firmly believed they were now going to be devoured. Accordingly, when the English sailor came in and started to lead away one of them, the rest set up a most lamentable cry, and hung about her, and took their leave of her with such agonies, the Englishman fetched Friday's father, who let them know that the five men had chosen them for their wives.

When the last woman had been taken, and the fright they were in was a little over, the men went to work, and the Spaniards helped them, and in a few hours they had built each of the Englishmen a new hut; for those they had already were crowded with their tools, household stuff, and provisions. The three



wicked ones had settled farthest off from my old habitation where the Spaniards and Friday's father continued to dwell, and the two honest ones established themselves nearer, but both were on the north shore of the island, though separated as before.

When I came to the place, and viewed the improvements and management of the several little colonies, the two men had so far outgone the three that there was no comparison. They had innumerable young trees planted about their huts, so that when you came to the place, nothing was to be seen but a wood; and everything was thriving and flourishing about them. They had grapes planted in order, and managed like a vineyard. They had also found themselves a retreat in the thickest part of the woods, where though there was not a natural cave yet they made one, with incessant labor of their hands, for a refuge if any mischief happened; and around the cave they set a vast number of stakes and poles of the wood which grew so readily, and they made the approach impassable, except in some secret places of their own leaving.

As to the three reprobates, though they were much civilized by their settlement, yet one of the certain companions of a profligate mind never left them, and that was their idleness. They did little but loiter about, find turtles' eggs, and catch fish and birds; in a word, anything but labor; and they fared accordingly. The diligent lived well and comfortably, and the slothful hard and beggarly; and so, I believe, generally speaking, it is all over the world.



## CHAPTER XVII

Of more visits to the island by the savages, who burn the habitations of two of the Englishmen — The savages are repulsed, but return in a great army — A battle is fought and a large part of the savages are killed and the rest are made prisoners — They are given a portion of the island and taught to provide food for themselves.

I NOW come to a scene different from all that had happened before. Early one morning, there came on shore five or six canoes of savages on the old errand of feeding upon their prisoners; but our men knew that if they were not seen, the savages would go off quietly, as soon as their business was done, having, as yet, not the least notion of there being any inhabitants in the island. When the savages were discovered, warning was sent to all the three plantations for every one to keep within doors, and a scout was posted in a proper place to give notice when the boats went to sea again.

This was, without doubt, very right; but after the canoes with the savages were gone off, the Spaniards peeped abroad; and some of them had the curiosity to go to the place where the savages had been. Here, to their great surprise, they found three left behind, lying fast asleep on the ground. It was supposed they had either been so gorged with their inhuman feast that they would not stir when the others went, or they had wandered into the woods and did not come back in time to be taken.

The Spaniards were greatly surprised at this sight and perfectly at a loss what to do. They had slaves enough already; and as to killing them, there were none of our men inclined to do that. But the three savages had no boat; and if they were left to roam about the island, they would certainly discover that there were inhabitants in it; and so nothing could be done but to take them prisoners. The poor fellows were seized and bound; and then carried to the bower, where



were most of the goats and the plantings of corn. Afterwards they were carried to the habitation of the two Englishmen.

Here they were set to work, though there was not much for them to do ; and by negligence in guarding them, one ran away to the woods, and they could not find him ; but they had good reason to believe he got home with savages who came on shore three or four weeks afterwards, and who, carrying on their revels as usual, went off in two days' time. This thought terrified them exceedingly ; for they concluded he would certainly give an account that there were people in the island, and also how few and weak they were.

The first testimony they had that this fellow had given intelligence of them was about two months later, when six canoes of savages, with eight or ten men in a canoe, came rowing along the north side of the island, and landed, soon after sunrise, at a convenient place, about a mile from the habitation of the two Englishmen, where this escaped man had been kept. The two men had the happiness to discover them about a league off, so that it was more than an hour before they landed. Having great reason to believe that they were betrayed, the first thing the Englishmen did was to bind the two slaves who had been the companions of the escaped savage, and cause two of the three men that had been brought with the women, and who, it seems, proved very faithful to them, to conduct the slaves with the Englishmen's two wives and whatever they could carry away to the retired place in the woods, which I have spoken of, and there to stay till they heard further.

As soon as the savages were all on shore, the two men saw them coming directly their way, and they opened the fences where the milch-goats were kept, and drove them all out ; leaving them to straggle in the woods whither they pleased, that the savages might think they were all wild.

When the two men had secured their wives and goods, they sent the other slave, who was at their place by accident, away



to the Spaniards with all speed, to give the alarm and desire help. Then they took their arms and what ammunition they had, and retreated toward the place in the wood where their wives were sent; keeping at a distance from the savages, yet near enough so that they might watch which way the savages went.

They had not gone far, when from a rising ground they saw the little army of their enemies come directly to their habitation, and, in a moment more, could see all their huts and household stuff flaming up together, to their great grief and mortification. They kept their station for a while, till they found the savages spread themselves all over the vicinity, rummaging every way in search of the people.

The two Englishmen, thinking themselves not secure where they were, thought it proper to make another retreat about half a mile farther. Their next halt was at the entrance into a very thick part of the woods, where an old trunk of a tree stood, which was hollow and vastly large; and in this tree they both hid to see what might happen. They had not been there long before two of the savages appeared running directly that way, and they spied three more following, and five more beyond the three, all coming the same way; besides which they saw seven or eight at a distance, running another way.

The poor men were now in great perplexity whether they should stay or fly; but they considered that if the savages ranged the country thus, they might find their retreat in the woods, and then all would be lost. So they resolved to fight them there, and if they were too many to deal with, they would get up to the top of the tree, whence they doubted not they could defend themselves, as long as their ammunition lasted, though all the savages that were landed, which was over fifty, were to attack them.

Having resolved upon this, they decided not to fire at the first two, but wait for the middle party, by which plan the



other parties would be separated. The first two savages confirmed them in this resolution by turning a little from them into another part of the wood ; but the three, and the five after them, came forward directly toward the tree. Seeing them come so straight, they resolved to fire one at a time. Perhaps the first shot might hit all three ; for which purpose the man who was to fire it put three or four small bullets into his gun ; and having a fair loophole, from a broken place in the tree, he took aim, without being seen, waiting till they were within about thirty yards of the tree, so that he could not miss.

While the Englishmen were waiting, they saw that one of the three was the savage that had escaped from them ; and they both knew him distinctly. As the savages kept near one another in a line, when the man fired, he hit two of them. The foremost was killed outright, being shot in the head. The second, which was the runaway Indian, was shot through the body and fell, but was not quite dead ; and a third had a little scratch on the shoulder, and, being dreadfully frightened, though not much hurt, sat down on the ground, yelling in a hideous manner.

The five that were behind, more frightened with the noise of the gun than sensible of the danger, stood still ; for the woods made the sound a thousand times bigger than it really was, the echoes rattling from one side to another, and the fowls rising from all parts, screaming, and every sort making a different noise, according to their kind.

However, all being silent again, they, not knowing what the matter was, came on to the place where their companions lay ; and here the poor ignorant creatures, not aware that they were within reach of the same mischief, stood all of a huddle over the wounded man, talking, and, as may be supposed, inquiring of him how he came to be hurt ; for they had never heard a gun in all their lives.

Our two men, though it grieved them to be obliged to kill so



many poor creatures, who had no notion of their danger ; yet, having them all thus in their power, and the first man having loaded his piece again, resolved to let fly both together among them ; and singling out, by agreement, which to aim at, they shot together, and killed, or very much wounded, four of them. The fifth, frightened even to death, though not hurt, fell with the rest ; so that our men, seeing them all fall together, thought they had killed them all. Our two men came boldly out from the tree before they had charged their guns, which was a wrong step ; and they were somewhat surprised when they came to the place, and found no less than four of the savages alive, and of them two very little hurt, and one not at all. This obliged them to fall upon the wretches with the stocks of their muskets and put them out of their pain.

Then the man that was not hurt at all kneeled down to them, with his two hands held up, and made piteous moans and gestures for his life. They made signs to him to sit down at the foot of a tree, and one of the Englishmen, with a piece of rope-twine, which he had by chance in his pocket, tied the fellow's hands behind him, and there they left him. With what speed they could, they now made after the two which were gone before, fearing they would find their way to the covered place in the woods, where their wives and the few goods they had left were. They came once in sight of the two, but it was at a distance. However, they had the satisfaction to see them cross a valley toward the sea ; and being content with that, they went back to the tree where they had left their prisoner, but he was gone, and the pieces of rope-yarn, with which they had bound him, lay just at the foot of the tree.

They were now in as great concern as before, not knowing how near the enemy might be, or in what number. So they resolved to go away to the place where their wives were. The savages had been in the wood, and very near that place, but



had not found it; and therefore everything was very safe, only the women were in a terrible fright.

While they were here, they had the comfort to have seven of the Spaniards come to their assistance. The other ten, with their servants, and old Friday (I mean Friday's father), were gone in a body to defend their bower and the corn and cattle that were kept there, in case the savages should rove over to that side of the country; but they did not spread so far. With the seven Spaniards came one of the three savages, who, as I said, were their prisoners formerly; and with them also came the savage whom the Englishmen had left bound hand and foot at the tree; for it seems they came that way, saw the slaughter of the seven men, and unbound the eighth, and brought him along with them.

The prisoners now began to be a burden to them; and the Spaniard governor ordered, for the present, that they should be sent out of the way, to my old cave in the valley, and be kept there, with two Spaniards to guard them and give them food for their subsistence, which was done; and they were bound there hand and foot for that night.

When the Spaniards came, the two Englishmen were so encouraged that they could not satisfy themselves to stay any longer there; but taking five of the Spaniards with four muskets and a pistol among them, and two stout quarter-staves, away they went in quest of the savages. They came to the tree where the men lay that had been killed; and it was easy to see that some more of the savages had been there, for they had attempted to carry their dead men away, but had given it over. Thence they advanced to rising ground, where they saw their camp destroyed, and where they had the mortification still to see some of the smoke; but neither could they here see any of the savages. They then resolved, though with all possible caution, to go forward toward their ruined plantation; but, a little before they came thither, arriving in sight



of the seashore, they saw the savages all embarking in their canoes, in order to be gone.

The poor Englishmen being now twice ruined, and all their improvements destroyed, the rest agreed to come and help them to rebuild, and assist them with needful supplies. Their three countrymen, who were not noted for having the least inclination to do any good, yet as soon as they heard of what had happened (for they, living remote eastward, knew nothing of the matter till all was over), came and offered their assistance, and did very friendly work for several days to restore the two men's habitations and make necessaries for them. And thus in a little time they were set upon their legs again.

It was five or six months after this before our people heard any more of the savages. Then, on a sudden, they were invaded by a most formidable fleet of no less than eight-and-twenty canoes, full of savages, armed with bows and arrows, great clubs, wooden swords, and such like engines of war.

As they came on shore in the evening, and at the westernmost side of the island, our men had that night to consult and consider what to do; and they resolved, first of all, to take down the huts which were built for the two Englishmen, and drive away their goats; because they supposed the savages would go directly thither, as soon as it was day, to play the old game over again, though they did not now land within two leagues of the place. So our people drove away the flock of goats they had at the old bower, and left as little appearance of inhabitants anywhere as was possible; and the next morning early they posted themselves, with all their force, at the plantation of the two men.

The new invaders, leaving their canoes, came ranging along the shore, to the number of two hundred and fifty, as near as our men could judge. Our army was small; but, that which was worse, they had not arms for all their number. The whole account stood thus: seventeen Spaniards, five English-



men, old Friday (or Friday's father), the three slaves taken with the women, and three other slaves, who lived with the Spaniards. To arm these, they had sixteen muskets, five pistols, three fowling-pieces, two swords, and three old halberds.

To their slaves they did not give either musket or fusee; but they had each a halberd, or a long staff with a great spike of iron fastened into each end of it, and by his side a hatchet. Also every one of our men had a hatchet. Two of the women could not be prevailed upon, but they would come into the fight, and they had bows and arrows, and hatchets too.

The Spaniard governor commanded the whole; and Will Atkins, who, though a dreadful fellow for wickedness, was most daring and bold, commanded under him. Our men had no advantage in their situation; only that Will Atkins, with six men, was stationed just behind a small thicket of bushes, as an advanced guard.

When the savages ran straggling about every way out of all manner of order, Will Atkins let about fifty of them pass by him. Then seeing the rest come in a very thick throng, he ordered three of his men to fire, they having loaded their muskets with six or seven bullets apiece. How many they killed or wounded they knew not, but the consternation was inexpressible among the savages. They were frightened to the last degree to hear such a dreadful noise, and to find some of their men killed and some hurt, but to see nobody that did it. In the middle of their fright, Will Atkins and his other three men let fly again among them; and in less than a minute, the first three, having loaded, gave them a third volley.

Had Will Atkins and his men retired immediately, as soon as they fired, or had the rest of our people been at hand, to pour in their shot, the savages would have been effectually routed. As it was, the terror that was among them came principally from the fact that they were killed and could see nobody that hurt them; but Will Atkins and his men staying



to load again, some of the savages who were at a distance spied them and came upon them behind. Atkins and his men fired two or three times, and killed more than twenty, meanwhile retiring as fast as they could, yet the savages wounded Atkins himself, and killed one of his fellow-Englishmen with their arrows, as they did afterwards one Spaniard, and one of the Indian slaves who came with the women. This slave was a most gallant fellow, and killed five with no weapons but one of the armed staves and a hatchet.

Atkins and his men, being hard pushed, retreated to a rising ground in the wood; and the Spaniards, after firing three volleys, retreated also; for the number of the assailants was so great, and they were so desperate, that though fully fifty of them were killed, and more than as many wounded, yet they came on fearless of danger and shot their arrows like a cloud; and it was observed that their wounded, who were not quite disabled, fought like madmen.

Finding our men were gone, they drew themselves up in a ring, and shouted twice, in token of their victory.

The Spaniard governor having gathered his little body of men together, Atkins would have had them march and charge; but the Spaniard said: "Seignior Atkins, you see how their wounded men fight; let them alone till morning. Then all the wounded men will be stiff and sore, and so we shall have the fewer to engage."

This advice was good; but having waited till after sundown, as it was a clear moonlight night and they found the savages in great disorder about their dead and wounded men, they resolved to fall upon them at once. One of the Englishmen, in whose quarter it was the fight began, led them round between the woods and the seaside westward, and then turning short south, they came so near where the thickest of the enemy lay, that, before they were seen or heard, eight of them fired in upon the savages and did dreadful execution. In half



a minute more, eight others fired, pouring in their small shot in such a quantity that abundance were killed and wounded ; and all this while the savages were not able to see who hurt them or which way to fly.

The Spaniards loaded their guns with the utmost expedition, and then divided themselves into three bodies, and resolved to charge in among them all together. They had in each body eight persons, that is to say, in all twenty-two men, and the two women, who, by the way, fought desperately. They would have had the women keep back, but they said they were resolved to die with their husbands. Having thus formed their little army, they marched out from among the trees and came to the enemy, shouting and hallooing as loud as they could. The savages stood all together, but were in the utmost confusion, hearing the noise of our men shouting from three quarters. As soon as our people came near enough to be seen, some arrows were shot, and poor old Friday was wounded, though not dangerously ; but our men, running up, fired and then fell on the foe with the butt-ends of their muskets, their swords, staves, and hatchets, and laid about them so well that the savages set up a dismal screaming and howling, and fled to save their lives which way soever they could.

Our men killed or mortally wounded in the two fights about one hundred and eighty. The rest, being frightened out of their wits, scoured through the woods and over the hills, with all the speed fear and nimble feet could help them to. As we did not trouble ourselves much to pursue them, they got all together to the seaside where they had landed, and where their canoes lay. But their disaster was not at an end yet ; for it blew a terrible storm of wind that night from the sea, so that it was impossible for them to go off ; and when the tide came up, their canoes were most of them driven by the surge of the sea high upon the shore ; and some of them were dashed to pieces.

Our men got little rest that night ; but having refreshed



themselves as well as they could, they marched to that part of the island where the savages were fled. At length they came in view of the miserable remains of the savages' army. There appeared to be about a hundred still. Their posture was generally sitting on the ground, with the knees up toward the mouth, and the head between the two hands.

When our men came within musket-shot of them, the Spaniard governor ordered two muskets to be fired, without ball, to alarm them. This he did, that by their actions he might know whether they were still in heart to fight, or were so beaten as to be discouraged. As soon as the savages heard the guns, they started up in the greatest consternation imaginable; and as our men advanced swiftly toward them, they all ran screaming and yelling away, with a kind of howling noise, which our men did not understand, and had never heard before; and thus they ran up the hills into the country.

At first our men had much rather the weather had been calm, and they had all gone away to sea; but they did not consider that this might probably have been the occasion of their coming again in such multitudes as not to be resisted. Will Atkins, who, notwithstanding his wound, kept always with the rest, proved the best counsellor in this case. His advice was to take the advantage that offered, and step in between them and their boats which they would then destroy, and so deprive the savages of the capacity of ever returning any more to plague the island.

They consulted long about this; and some were against it for fear of making the wretches fly to the woods and live there desperate, and so they should have them to hunt like wild beasts, be afraid to stir out about their business, and have their plantations continually rifled, all their tame goats destroyed, and, in short, be reduced to a life of continual distress.

Will Atkins told them they had better have to do with a hundred men than with a nation; and he showed the necessity



of destroying the boats so plainly that they went to work immediately, and getting some dry wood together from a dead tree, they tried to set some of them on fire, but the boats were so wet that they would not burn well. However, the fire so burned the upper part that it made them unfit for floating in the sea any more. When the Indians saw what our men were about, some of them came running out of the woods, and, approaching as near as they dared to our men, kneeled down and cried, "Oa, Oa, Waramokoa!" and some other words of their language, which none of our people understood anything of; but as they made pitiful gestures and strange noises, it was easy to see they begged to have their boats spared, and that they would be gone, and never come there again.

But our men were now satisfied that they had no way to preserve themselves, or to save their colony, except by effectually preventing any of these people from ever going home to tell the story. So letting them know that they should not have any mercy, they destroyed every canoe that the storm had spared; at the sight of which the savages raised a hideous cry and ran about the island like distracted men.

The Spaniards, with all their prudence, did not consider that while they made those people thus desperate, they ought to have kept a good guard at the same time upon their plantations. It is true they had driven away their cattle, and the Indians did not find my own castle at the hill, nor the cave in the valley — yet they discovered my plantation at the bower, and pulled the bower to pieces, and all the fences about it; trod all the corn under foot, tore up the grape vines, and did our men an inestimable damage, though to themselves not one farthing's worth of service.

Our men were in no condition to hunt them up and down. They were nimble of foot, and our men durst not go abroad single, for fear of being surrounded with their numbers. The best was, they had no weapons; for though they had bows,



they had no arrows left nor materials to make more ; nor had they any edge-tool among them.

The extremity and distress they were reduced to was indeed deplorable ; but, at the same time, our men were also brought to very bad circumstances by them ; for their provisions were destroyed and their harvest spoiled. The only food supply they had now was the stock of goats in the valley by the cave, and some little corn which grew there, and the plantation of the three Englishmen, who were now reduced to two, one of them having been killed. They had, as I may say, a hundred wolves upon the island, which would devour everything they could come at, yet could hardly be come at themselves.

The first thing they concluded was that they would, if possible, drive them to the farther part of the island southeast, that if any more savages came on shore, they might not find one another ; then, that they would daily hunt and harass them, and if they could at last tame them, and bring them to terms, they would give them corn, and teach them how to plant, and live upon their daily labor.

In order to do this, they so followed them and terrified them with their guns, that they kept out of sight farther and farther till reduced to the utmost misery ; and many were found dead in the woods, starved to death. Finally the Spaniard governor proposed, if possible, to take one of them alive, and see if they could be brought to terms that might save their lives and do us no harm.

It was some while before any could be taken ; but one of them was at last surprised and made a prisoner. Finding himself kindly used and victuals given to him, he grew tractable. They brought old Friday to him, who talked often with him, and told him how kind our men would be to them all ; that they would give them part of the island to live in, provided they would keep in their own bounds, and that they should have corn to plant and make grow for their bread, and some



bread for their present subsistence. Old Friday bade the fellow go and talk with the rest of his countrymen, and see what they said; assuring him that, if they did not agree immediately, they should be all destroyed.

The poor wretches, thoroughly humbled, and reduced in number to thirty-seven, closed with the proposal at the first offer, and begged to have some food given them; upon which twelve Spaniards and two Englishmen, well armed, with three Indian slaves and old Friday, marched to the place where they were. The three Indian slaves carried a large quantity of bread, some rice boiled, made into cakes and dried in the sun, and three live goats. The savages were ordered to go to the side of a hill, where they sat down and ate their provisions very thankfully, and they were the most faithful fellows to their words that could be; for, except when they came to beg victuals and directions, they never went out of their bounds; and there they lived when I came to the island.

They had been taught both to plant corn, make bread, breed tame goats, and milk them. They were confined to a neck of land, with high rocks behind them, and lying plain toward the sea before them, on the southeast corner of the island. They had land enough, and it was very good and fruitful. Our men taught them to make wooden spades, such as I made for myself, and gave them twelve hatchets and three or four knives; and they were the most subjected, innocent creatures that ever were heard of.

After this, the colony enjoyed a perfect tranquillity, with respect to the savages, till I came, which was about two years after; not but that, now and then, some canoes of savages came on shore for their triumphal, unnatural feasts; but they did not make any search or inquiry after their countrymen; and if they had, it would have been very hard to find them.

Our people taught the savages to make wicker-work, or baskets; but they soon outdid their masters and contrived



abundance of most ingenious things. They even made the sides of their huts of basket-work all the way round ; and our men were so taken with this, that they got the wild savages to come and do the like for them. As for Will Atkins, who was now become a very industrious, useful, and sober fellow, he had them make him such a tent of basket-work as, I believe, was never seen, — one hundred and twenty paces round on the outside.

In this great bee-hive lived the families of the three Englishmen. One of the Englishmen had been killed, but his wife remained with three children, and the other two men were not at all backward to give the widow her full share of everything, of corn, milk, grapes, etc., and when they killed a kid, or found a turtle on the shore. So they all lived well enough ; though, it was true, they were not as industrious as the other two.

As for religion, I do not know that there was anything of that kind among them ; though they often put one another in mind that there was a God, by the very common method of swearing by his name. Nor were their poor ignorant savage wives much better for having married Christians.

The utmost improvement which the wives had from them was that they had taught them to speak English pretty well ; and most of their children, who were nearly twenty in all, were taught to speak English too, though they at first spoke it in a very broken manner, like their mothers.

## CHAPTER XVIII

Of the things I brought from England and presented to my colony — Of the condition in which I left the island — We sail away, and three days later encounter a fleet of savage canoes — The death of Friday — The voyage is continued and I at length again arrive in my native land.

I ENTERED into a serious discourse with the Spaniard governor about the people's stay in the island ; for I was not come



to carry any of them off. On the other hand, I came to establish them there, and I let him know that I had been at a great expense to supply them with all things necessary, as well for their convenience as their defence; and particularly in bringing the artificers to assist them.

The tailor, the smith, and the two carpenters were all of them most necessary people. The tailor, to show his concern for them, went to work immediately, and made every man a shirt; and, what was still more, he taught the women not only how to sew and stitch, and use the needle, but he had them assist to make the shirts for their husbands and for all the rest.

As to the carpenters, they took to pieces all my clumsy, unhandy things, and made convenient tables, stools, bedsteads, cupboards, lockers, shelves, and everything the colony wanted of that kind.

I gave every man a spade, a shovel, and a rake; and to every separate place a pick-axe, a broad axe, and a saw; always appointing, that as often as any were broken or worn out, they should be replaced without grudging from the general stores that I left behind. Nails, hinges, hammers, chisels, knives, and all sorts of iron-work, the people had without reserve, as they required; and for the use of the smith I left two tons of unwrought iron for a supply. My magazine of powder and arms which I brought was such, even to profusion, that they could not but rejoice; for now they could march as I used to do, with a musket upon each shoulder, if there was occasion.

Before I went away, I concluded I ought to parcel the land out among the dwellers in the island that they might not quarrel afterwards about their situations. This sharing out the land I left to Will Atkins, who divided it justly, and to every one's satisfaction. I caused a paper to be drawn up and signed and sealed, setting out the bounds of every man's plantation, and testifying that I gave them thereby severally a right to the



whole possession and inheritance of the respective plantations, reserving all the rest of the island as my own property, and a certain rent for every particular plantation after eleven years.

As to the government and laws amongst them, I told them I was not capable of giving them better rules than they were able to give themselves ; only I made them promise to live in love and good neighborhood with one another.

Being now settled in a kind of commonwealth among themselves, it was odd to have seven and thirty Indians in a nook of the island independent, and, indeed, unemployed ; for, excepting the providing themselves food, they had no manner of business. I suggested, therefore, to the governor Spaniard, that he should go with Friday's father, and propose to them to remove, and either plant for themselves, or be taken into the several families as servants, to be maintained for their labor.

They agreed to the governor's proposal, and came all very cheerfully along with him. So we allotted three or four of them land, but all the rest chose to be employed as servants. Thus my colony was in a manner settled as follows : the Spaniards possessed my original habitation, which was the capital city, and extended their plantations all along the side of the brook as far as my bower. The English lived in the northeast part, where Will Atkins and his comrades began, and every plantation had a great addition of land to take in, if they found occasion, so that they need not jostle one another for want of room.

All the west end of the island was left uninhabited, that if any of the savages should come on shore there for their customary barbarities, they might come and go ; and I never heard that the planters were attacked or disturbed any more.

It is to be observed here that I did not think fit to let them know anything of the sloop I had brought on the ship ; for had I set up the sloop, and left it among them, they would, upon every light disgust, have separated, and gone away from one another ; or perhaps have turned pirates, and so made the



island a den of thieves ; nor did I leave the two pieces of brass cannon that I had on board, or the two quarterdeck guns, for the same reason.

When I departed, the people were all in a flourishing condition. I went on board the ship on the 6th of May, having been about twenty-five days among them ; and I promised to send them further supplies from the Brazils, if I could possibly find an opportunity ; particularly some sheep, hogs, and cows.

The next day, giving them a salute of five guns at parting, we set sail, and arrived at the bay of All Saints in the Brazils in about twenty-two days, meeting nothing remarkable in our passage but this : that about three days after we had sailed, being becalmed, and the current setting strong to the northeast, we were driven somewhat out of our course, and once or twice our men cried out, " Land ! " but whether it was the continent or islands we could not tell.

The third day, near evening, the weather calm, we saw the sea covered toward the land with something very black. Our chief mate, going up the main-shrouds a little way, and looking with a perspective, cried out it was an army. I could not imagine what he meant. " Sir," says he, " 'tis an army in a fleet ; and I believe there are a thousand canoes, and they are coming toward us."

I was a little startled, and my nephew, the captain, was still more so ; for he had heard such terrible stories of the savages in the island, that he said two or three times we should all be devoured. I must confess, considering we were becalmed, and the current setting strong toward the shore, I liked it the worse. However, I bade my companions not to be afraid.

The weather continued calm, and the canoes came on apace toward us. So I gave orders to anchor and furl all our sails. I told our crew they had nothing to fear but fire, and they should get their boats out, and fasten them, one close by the head, and



the other by the stern, and man them both well. This I did, that the men in the boats should be ready with skeets<sup>o</sup> and buckets to put out any fire the savages might endeavor to fix to the outside of the ship.

In this posture we lay by for them, and in a little while they came to us. Never before was such horrid sight seen by Christians. Though my mate was much mistaken in his calculation of the number of their canoes, yet when they came up we reckoned about a hundred and twenty-six; some of which had sixteen or seventeen men in them.

The savages seemed to be struck with wonder and astonishment, as at a sight which doubtless they had never seen before. Five or six of the large canoes came so near our long-boat that our men beckoned with their hands to keep them back, which they understood very well, and went back; but at their retreat about fifty arrows came on board us, and one of our men in the long-boat was very much wounded.

I called to our men not to fire, and we handed down some boards into the boats, and the carpenters presently set up a kind of fence to cover them from the arrows of the savages, if they should shoot again.

About half an hour afterwards they all came up in a body astern of us, and in a short time more they rowed a little farther out to sea, till they were directly broadside with us, and then rowed down straight upon us, till they came so near that we could hear them speak. Upon this I ordered all my men to keep close, lest they should shoot any more arrows; but being so near as to be within hearing, I made Friday go out upon the deck, and call to them in his language to know what they meant; which accordingly he did.

Whether they understood him, I knew not; but immediately he cried out they were going to shoot, and, unhappily for him, they let fly about two hundred of their arrows, and, to my inexpressible grief, killed Friday, no other man being in their



sight. The poor fellow was shot with no less than three arrows, and about three more fell very near him.

I was so enraged at the loss of my trusty servant and companion that I ordered five cannon to be loaded with small shot, and four with great, and gave them such a broadside as they had never heard in their lives before. They were not more than half a cable's length off when we fired ; and I can neither tell how many we killed nor how many we wounded, but surely such a fright and hurry never were seen among such a multitude. There were thirteen or fourteen of their canoes split or overturned, and the men all set a-swimming. The rest, frightened out of their wits, scoured away as fast as they could, taking but little care to save those whose boats were spoiled with our shot ; so I suppose that many of them were lost. Our men picked up one fellow, swimming for his life, fully an hour after the canoes were all gone.

They fled so fast that, in three hours or thereabouts, we could not see more than three or four straggling canoes, nor did we ever see the rest any more ; for a breeze of wind springing up the same evening, we set sail for the Brazils.

We had a prisoner, indeed, but the creature was so sullen that he would neither eat nor speak, and we all fancied he would starve himself to death ; but I took a way to cure him ; for I made our men take him and make him believe they would toss him into the sea, and so leave him where they found him, if he would not speak ; and they really did throw him into the sea, and came away from him. Then he followed them, and called to them, though they knew not one word of what he said. However, at last, they took him in and he began to be more tractable.

It was a long while before we could make him understand anything ; but, in time, our men taught him some English, and we inquired what country he came from, but could make nothing of what he said ; for his speech was all gutturals, and



spoken in the throat in such a hollow, odd manner, that we were of the opinion that he might speak that language as well if he were gagged as otherwise ; nor could we perceive that in speaking he had any occasion either for teeth, tongue, lips, or palate, but formed the words with an open throat. He told us, however, some time after, when we had taught him a little English, that the savages were going with their kings to fight a great battle. When he said kings, we asked him how many kings. He said they were "five nation" and that they all joined to go against "two nation." We asked him what made them come out to us.

He said, "To makee te great wonder look."

All those natives, when they learn English, add two *e*'s at the end of a word where we use one ; and they place the accent upon them. I could hardly make Friday leave off the extra *e*. And now I name the poor fellow once more, I must take my last leave of him. Poor honest Friday ! We buried him with all the decency and solemnity possible, by putting him into a coffin, and throwing him into the sea ; and I caused the crew to fire eleven guns for him ; and so ended the life of the most grateful, faithful, honest, and affectionate servant that ever man had.

We went away with a fair wind for Brazil ; and in about seventeen days' time we came to anchor off the bay of All Saints, and I got on shore three bales of English goods, such as fine broadcloths, and linen, which I had brought for a present to my partner.

He was a very generous, open-hearted man ; and he sent me on board a gift of fresh provisions, and sweetmeats, some tobacco, and three or four fine medals of gold. Now I proposed to set up the sloop, which I had brought with me from England, in order to send the supplies I intended to my plantation.

Accordingly, I got hands, and finished the sloop in a very few days, for she was already framed ; and I gave the master



of her such instructions that he could not miss the place. I got the vessel soon loaded with the small cargo I sent; and one of our seamen offered to go with the sloop and settle. So I wrote to the governor Spaniard, to allot him a sufficient quantity of land for a plantation, and gave him some clothes and tools for his work, which he said he understood, having been an old planter at Maryland, and a buccaneer into the bargain. I encouraged the fellow, and, as an addition, I granted him the savage whom we had taken prisoner of war to be his slave, and ordered the governor Spaniard to give him his share of everything he wanted with the rest.

When we came to fit this man out, my old partner told me there was a certain very honest fellow, a Brazil planter of his acquaintance, who had fallen into the displeasure of the church. "I know not what the matter is with him," says he, "but I think he is a heretic, and he would be very glad to get away with his wife and two daughters, if you would let them go to your island and allot them a plantation."

I granted this presently, and we put them on board the sloop.

Among the supplies for my tenants in the island, I sent three milch-cows and five calves, about twenty-two hogs and four horses. For my Spaniards, I engaged three Portugal women to go, and recommended the Spaniards to marry them and use them kindly.

'All this cargo arrived safe, and, as you may easily suppose, was very welcome to my old inhabitants.

I have now done with the island, and all manner of discourse about it; and have only to add that after a long voyage to the Indies and to China I at length arrived in London the 10th of January, 1705, having been absent from England ten years and nine months. And here I resolved to prepare for a longer journey than all these, having lived a life of infinite variety seventy-two years, and learned sufficiently to know the value of retirement and the blessing of ending our days in peace.





ENGLAND AND ITS VICINITY, SHOWING VARIOUS PLACES MENTIONED  
IN THE STORY

## NOTES

PAGE 1. **Flanders** was a former district of Europe extending across western Belgium into Holland on the north and France on the south. Here the Dutch were at war with Spain from 1621 to 1648, when the Spaniards finally gave up the struggle.

PAGE 3. The **Humber** is a navigable river on which Hull is situated, about twenty-five miles from the mouth.

PAGE 4. **Roads**: a place where ships can lie at anchor some distance from shore.

PAGE 10. **Morisco**: A descendant of one of the Moors who remained in Spain after the conquest of Granada in 1492.

PAGE 10. A **fusee** is a flintlock gun.

PAGE 19. A **piece of eight** was a Spanish coin formerly very widely used in the world's commerce. It was of silver, and got its name from the fact that it was equivalent to eight reals. In size and weight it was much the same as our silver dollar.

PAGE 20. A gold **ducat** was worth about \$2.

PAGE 24. The **Caribbee Islands** extend in a long chain north and south, separating the Caribbean Sea from the Atlantic Ocean. They are now called The Lesser Antilles.

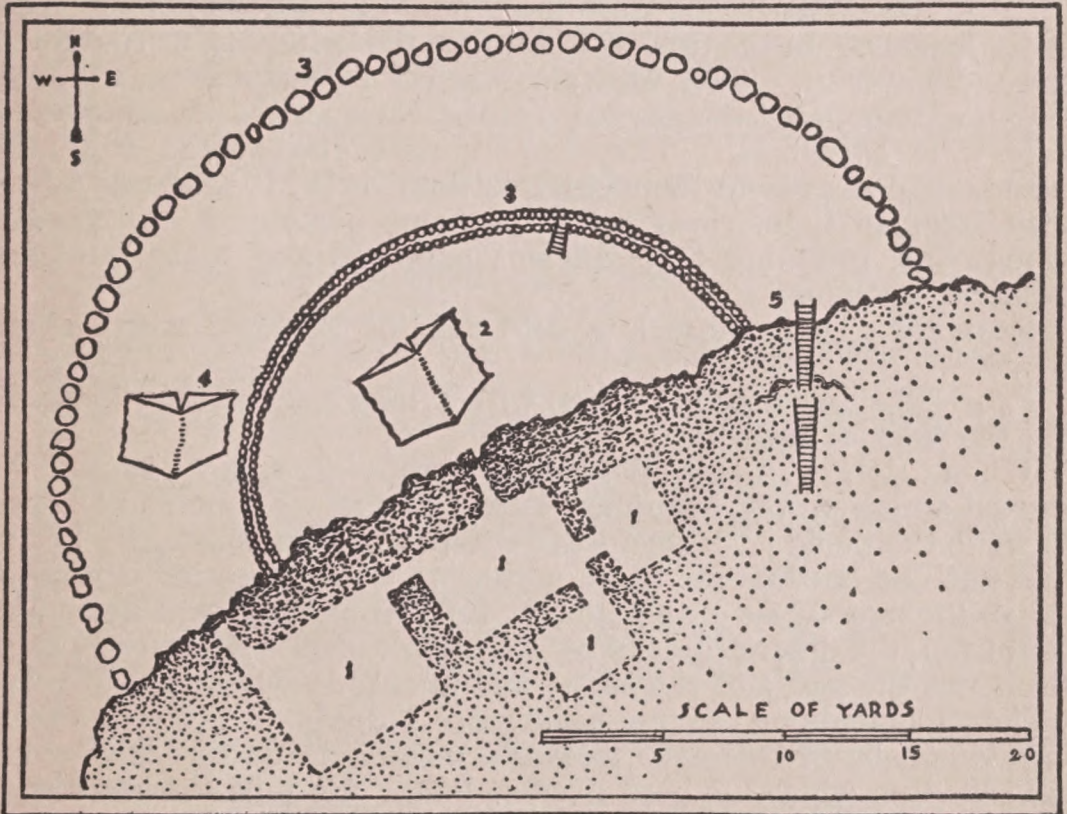




THE DOTTED LINE SHOWS THE COURSE OF CRUSOE'S VOYAGE (p. 23)



PAGE 31. Examination of the various references contained in the book to the surroundings of the island place it very definitely south-east of Trinidad, with forty miles between; but in reality there is only water in that direction, and the island which best fits the case is Tobago, eighteen miles northeast of Trinidad. Tobago is thirty-two miles long and from six to nine miles broad. It was discovered by Columbus in 1498. From its rough, gloomy-looking mountains, dense forests, and the abrupt precipices of its coast it has been called "The Melancholy Isle"; but close acquaintance with it imparts a very agreeable impression. The climate is extremely salubrious, the sea breezes cool the highlands, and the rich tropical verdure is beautiful and romantic. Its inhabitants number about twenty thousand. They are mostly of African descent, but they all speak English. The principal exports are sugar, cotton, coffee, and cocoanuts.



PLAN OF CRUSOE'S HABITATION (page 35)

- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1. His cave.          | 4. Tent made for Friday.                     |
| 2. His tent.          | 5. The ladders for ascending to the hilltop. |
| 3. Line of palisades. |  |



PAGE 32. A **crow** is an iron bar with a claw or beak at the end.

PAGE 52. **Case-bottle** : a bottle made to fit in a case with others, and therefore usually square in form.

PAGE 55. The **cassava** is a shrubby tropical plant with fleshy roots. These roots when grated and pressed yield an edible starch.

PAGE 74. **Watch-coat** : A coat, longer and heavier than ordinary, worn by a ship's officer when on watch. Formerly common seamen also had such coats.

PAGE 85. **Buskins** are a strong covering for the foot that come up high on the leg. **Spatterdashes** are leg coverings to protect the wearer from water and mud.

PAGE 108. A **doubloon** is a coin of Spain and South America worth nearly \$ 15.

PAGE 108. **Pumps** are low shoes with thin soles.

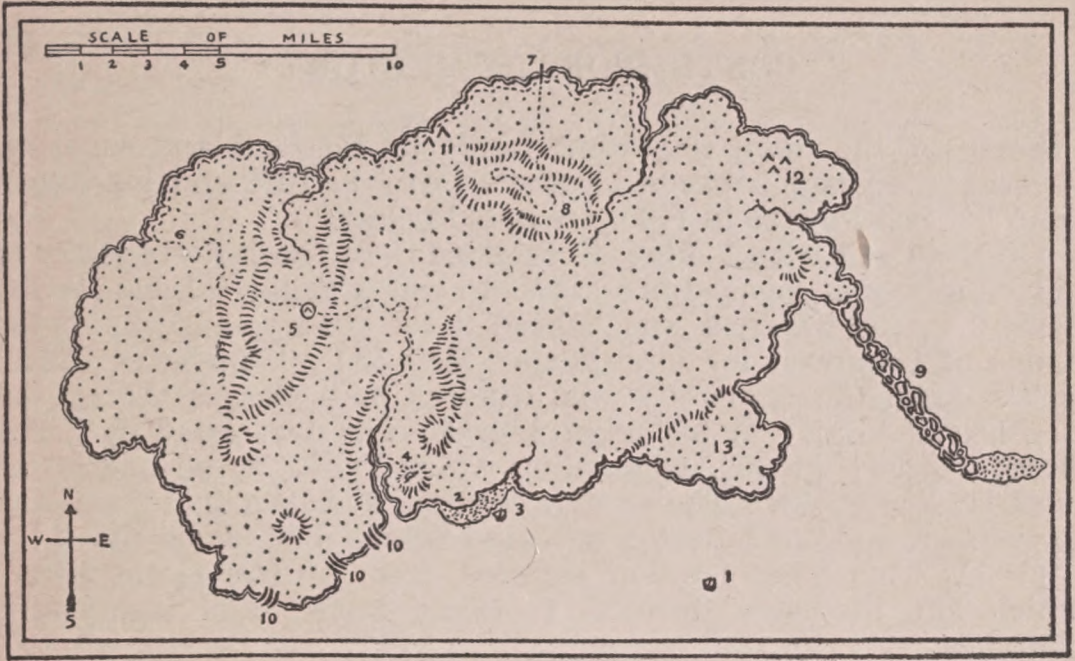
PAGE 119. The **Caribs** were the original inhabitants of the West India Islands. In the time of Columbus these Indians were numerous and powerful. They were also warlike and aggressive, and they strenuously opposed the advances of the Europeans. It is supposed they were cannibals. They have almost disappeared from the islands, and at present their chief settlement is in Honduras where they form an industrious and prosperous portion of the people, though still retaining their ancient language and many of their primitive customs.

PAGE 163. A **moidore** is a gold coin of Portugal worth about \$ 6.50.

PAGE 209. A **skeet** is a scoop with a long handle used in washing the sides of vessels.

When Robert Louis Stevenson wrote *Treasure Island*, he started a map of the imaginary island almost as soon as he began to write the book. Thenceforth he kept the map constantly before him until he finished the book, adding to it or correcting it according to the necessities of the story. As a result there was never any confusion, the descriptions never contradict, and it is perfectly clear what was the shape of the island and in exactly what parts of it the various incidents of the tale occurred. I doubt if Defoe in evolving *Robinson Crusoe* ever took the trouble to outline that tropical island on which his hero lived so long. He tells the story with great detail, and the impression conveyed is very truth-like, yet there is a good deal of vague uncertainty about the island's geography. After careful study, I have made the accompanying map, which agrees as nearly as possible with the descriptions. The points indicated by the numbers are as follows :—





ROBINSON CRUSOE'S ISLAND

1. Here the ship was driven on a shoal.
2. Here Robinson reached the land.
3. Here the wreck lay the morning after the storm only one-fourth mile from shore at low tide.
4. Here Robinson built his "castle" on the northwest side of a hill.
5. In this valley Robinson built his "bower."
6. The route taken by Robinson when he first explored the north shore.
7. Here Robinson erected a pole.
8. The wooded valley in which Robinson was lost. Here he afterward found a cave, and here he in time kept a part of his goats.
9. The rocks extending out into the sea with a sandy beach at the end.
10. The landing places of several parties of cannibals on the south side of the island.
11. The settlement of the two Englishmen.
12. The settlement of the three Englishmen.
13. On this peninsula a large party of savages was kept confined.



## CONTEMPORARY HISTORY

Some of the more important events in England and America, covering the years between Crusoe's birth in 1632 and his return from his last voyage in 1705, are noted below.

[1632-49] Charles I, king of England. In the last six years of his reign he was engaged in a stubborn war with the "Long Parliament." After Charles was beheaded the government was in the hands of Cromwell for nine years [1649-58]. Soon after Cromwell's death the monarchy was restored and Charles II sat on the throne. Early in his reign London was devastated by "The Great Plague" [1665], concerning which Defoe wrote one of his most famous books. The scourge continued at its height from May to October, and one hundred thousand people died in the city.

[1666] This year London suffered from, "The Great Fire" which left in ashes thirteen thousand houses and eighty-nine churches.

[1685] After the death of Charles II his brother, James II, became the British ruler, but it was not long before he was dethroned by a revolution [1689], and he was succeeded by his nephew William III, Prince of Orange. James fled to France, where he was befriended by the king, Louis XIV; and then began a long struggle between France and England, which lasted, with occasional intermissions, for seventy-four years.

[1702] William III died and Queen Anne came to the throne.

[1659] At the time Crusoe was wrecked on his island the settlement of both North and South America was well under way, and colonization in the West Indies dated back nearly a century and a half. Cuba was permanently settled in 1511 by the Spaniards, and they soon were established on many of the other islands, and at Panama, and in Peru and Mexico. Within a few decades, too, there were European settlements in the region of the Rio de la Plata, and in Brazil, and on the north coast of South America, where now are Guiana and Venezuela. The book gives the impression that Trinidad was a wilderness inhabited by Indians. So it was, for the most part, yet Spain had a colony there as early as 1532.

The first town to be started within the present boundaries of the United States was St. Augustine, settled by the Spaniards in 1565. The English made their first settlement at Jamestown in 1607, and in the same year the French established themselves in Nova Scotia,



and immediately afterward at Quebec. New York was started by the Dutch in 1614, chiefly for the purpose of fur-trading. Just half a century later [1664] the English took possession of the settlement, the town then having attained to a population of fifteen hundred. Plymouth was settled in 1620, Maryland in 1634, Charleston in 1680, and the Quakers, under the lead of William Penn, began to migrate about this time to the forests of Pennsylvania.

[1682] The Mississippi was for the first time explored from its upper waters to the mouth. This expedition under the famous La Salle gave France a claim to all the interior of the continent.

[1675-78] Great havoc was wrought in New England by King Philip's War. Many towns were sacked and burned and many lives lost before the savages were finally subjugated.

[1689] For a long time after this date, as a result of the hostilities between France and England, the northern English colonies in America suffered severely from invasions of French and Indians from Canada.







MACMILLAN'S  
POCKET SERIES OF ENGLISH  
CLASSICS

UNIFORM IN SIZE AND BINDING

Cloth - - - - - 25 Cents Each

---

**B. A. Heydrick, State Normal School, Millersville, Pa.**

"I know of no edition that can compare with yours in attractiveness and cheapness. So far as I have examined it the editor's work has been judiciously performed. But well-edited texts are easy to find: you have done something new in giving us a beautiful book, one that will teach pupils to love and care for books; and, which seems to me quite as important, you have made an edition which does not look 'school-booky.'"

**Oscar D. Robinson, Principal High School, Albany, N.Y.**

"The books possess all the excellencies claimed for them,—scholarly annotation, convenience of form, beautiful open pages, attractive binding, and remarkably low price. I shall take pleasure in recommending them for use in our school."

**S. H. Bundell, Principal Girls' High School, Lancaster, Pa.**

"The publishers may justly be proud of the clear type, convenient size, and beautiful binding of the book."

**George McK. Bain, Principal High School, Norfolk, Va.**

"Handsome volumes for school use I have never seen. They are well edited, clearly printed, and beautifully bound, while the price is remarkably low."

**Professor Charles M. Curry, Indiana State Normal School.**

"You have hit upon a splendid form for this series, and the price will certainly attract the attention of any one who has been looking for good material at a 'good' price."

**C. N. Kendall, Superintendent of Schools, Indianapolis.**

"The form in which you send out these little volumes is very attractive."

---

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

66 FIFTH AVENUE, NEW YORK



## ENGLISH CLASSICS

---

- Addison's *Sir Roger de Coverley*. Edited by ZELMA GRAY.
- Browning's *Shorter Poems*. Edited by FRANKLIN T. BAKER.
- Mrs. Browning's *Poems (Selections from)*. Edited by HELOISE E. HERSHEY.
- Burke's *Speech on Conciliation*. Edited by S. C. NEWSOM.
- Byron's *Childe Harold*. Edited by A. J. GEORGE.
- Byron's *Shorter Poems*. Edited by RALPH HARTT BOWLES.
- Carlyle's *Essay on Burns, with Selections*. Edited by WILLARD C. GORE.
- Chaucer's *Prologue to the Book of the Tales of Canterbury, the Knight's Tale, and the Nun's Priest's Tale*. Edited by ANDREW INGRAHAM.
- Coleridge's *The Ancient Mariner*. Edited by T. F. HUNTINGTON.
- Cooper's *Last of the Mohicans*. Edited by W. K. WICKES.
- Cooper's *The Deerslayer*.
- De Quincey's *Confessions of an English Opium Eater*. Edited by ARTHUR BEATTY.
- Dryden's *Palamon and Arcite*. Edited by PERCIVAL CHUBB.
- Early American Orations, 1760-1824. Edited by LOUIE R. HELLER.
- Epoch-making Papers in United States History. Edited by M. S. BROWN.
- Franklin's *Autobiography*.
- George Eliot's *Silas Marner*. Edited by E. L. GULICK.
- Goldsmith's *Vicar of Wakefield*. Edited by H. W. BOYNTON.
- Hawthorne's *Twice-Told Tales*. Edited by R. C. GASTON.
- Irving's *Alhambra*. Edited by ALFRED M. HITCHCOCK.
- Irving's *Life of Goldsmith*. Edited by GILBERT SYKES BLAKELY.
- Irving's *Sketch Book*.
- Jonathan Edwards' *Sermons (Selections from)*. Edited by Professor H. N. GARDINER.
- Longfellow's *Evangeline*. Edited by LEWIS B. SEMPLE.
- Lowell's *Vision of Sir Launfal*. Edited by HERBERT E. BATES.
- Macaulay's *Essay on Addison*. Edited by C. W. FRENCH.
- Macaulay's *Essay on Clive*. Edited by J. W. PEARCE.
- Macaulay's *Essay on Johnson*. Edited by WILLIAM SCHUYLER.
- Macaulay's *Essay on Milton*. Edited by C. W. FRENCH.
- Macaulay's *Essay on Warren Hastings*. Edited by Mrs. M. J. FRICK.



## ENGLISH CLASSICS

---

- Milton's *Comus, Lycidas, and Other Poems*. Edited by ANDREW J. GEORGE.
- Milton's *Paradise Lost*. Books I and II. Edited by W. I. CRANE.
- Palgrave's *Golden Treasury of Songs and Lyrics*.
- Plutarch's *Lives of Cæsar, Brutus, and Antony*. Edited by MARTHA BRIER.
- Poe's *Poems*. Edited by CHARLES W. KENT.
- Poe's *Prose Tales (Selections from)*.
- Pope's *Homer's Iliad*. Edited by ALBERT SMYTH.
- Ruskin's *Sesame and Lilies, and King of the Golden River*. Edited by HERBERT E. BATES.
- Scott's *Ivanhoe*. Edited by ALFRED M. HITCHCOCK.
- Scott's *Lady of the Lake*. Edited by ELIZABETH A. PACKARD.
- Scott's *Lay of the Last Minstrel*. Edited by RALPH H. BOWLES.
- Scott's *Marmion*. Edited by GEORGE B. AITON.
- Shakespeare's *As You Like It*. Edited by CHARLES ROBERT GASTON.
- Shakespeare's *Hamlet*. Edited by L. A. SHERMAN.
- Shakespeare's *Julius Cæsar*. Edited by GEORGE W. HUFFORD and LOIS G. HUFFORD.
- Shakespeare's *Merchant of Venice*. Edited by CHARLOTTE W. UNDERWOOD.
- Shakespeare's *Macbeth*. Edited by C. W. FRENCH.
- Shakespeare's *Twelfth Night*. Edited by EDWARD P. MORTON.
- Shelley and Keats (*Selections from*). Edited by S. C. NEWSOM.
- Southern Poets (*Selections from*). Edited by W. L. WEBER.
- Spenser's *Faerie Queene, Book I*. Edited by GEORGE ARMSTRONG WAUCHOPE.
- Stevenson's *Treasure Island*. Edited by H. A. VANCE.
- Tennyson's *The Princess*. Edited by WILSON FARRAND.
- Tennyson's *Idylls of the King*. Edited by W. T. VLYMEN.
- Tennyson's *Shorter Poems*. Edited by CHARLES READ NUTTER.
- John Woolman's *Journal*.
- Wordsworth's *Shorter Poems*. Edited by EDWARD FULTON.
- Old English Ballads. Edited by Professor WILLIAM D. ARMES.
- Kingsley's *The Heroes*. Edited by CHARLES A. MCMURRY.



## ENGLISH CLASSICS

---

- Macaulay's Poems. Edited by FRANKLIN T. BAKER.  
Swift's Gulliver's Travels. Edited by CLIFTON JOHNSON.  
The Arabian Nights' Entertainments. Edited by CLIFTON JOHNSON.  
Keary's Heroes of Asgard. Edited by CHARLES A. MCMURRY.  
Hawthorne's Grandfather's Chair. Edited by CHARLES A. MCMURRY.  
Longfellow's Courtship of Miles Standish. Edited by HOMER P. LEWIS.  
Grimm's Fairy Tales. Selected and edited by JAMES H. FASSETT.  
Defoe's Robinson Crusoe. Edited by CLIFTON JOHNSON.  
Out of the Northland. Stories from the Northern Myths. By EMILIE  
KIP BAKER.  
Scott's The Talisman. Edited by FREDERICK TRENDLY.  
Scott's Quentin Durward.

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

66 FIFTH AVENUE, NEW YORK







NOV 15 1904







**LIBRARY OF CONGRESS**



00014721320

